## Lecture Notes in Mathematics

# An Introduction to Riemannian Geometry 

Sigmundur Gudmundsson
(Lund University)
(version 1.0327-15th of March 2017)

The latest version of this document can be found at http://www.matematik.lu.se/matematiklu/personal/sigma/

## Preface

These lecture notes grew out of an M.Sc. course on differential geometry which I gave at the University of Leeds 1992. Their main purpose is to introduce the beautiful theory of Riemannian geometry a still very active area of mathematical research. This is a subject with no lack of interesting examples. They are indeed the key to a good understanding of it and will therefore play a major role throughout this work. Of special interest are the classical Lie groups allowing concrete calculations of many of the abstract notions on the menu.

The study of Riemannian geometry is rather meaningless without some basic knowledge on Gaussian geometry i.e. the geometry of curves and surfaces in 3-dimensional Euclidean space. For this I recommend the excellent textbook: M. P. do Carmo, Differential geometry of curves and surfaces, Prentice Hall (1976).

These lecture notes are written for students with a good understanding of linear algebra, real analysis of several variables, the classical theory of ordinary differential equations and some topology. The most important results stated in the text are also proven there. Others are left to the reader as exercises, which follow at the end of each chapter. This format is aimed at students willing to put hard work into the course.

For further reading I recommend the interesting textbook: M. P. do Carmo, Riemannian Geometry, Birkhäuser (1992).

I am grateful to my many enthusiastic students and other readers who, throughout the years, have contributed to the text by giving numerous valuable comments on the presentation.

Norra Nöbbelöv the 17th of February 2017
Sigmundur Gudmundsson

## Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction ..... 5
Chapter 2. Differentiable Manifolds ..... 7
Chapter 3. The Tangent Space ..... 23
Chapter 4. The Tangent Bundle ..... 39
Chapter 5. Riemannian Manifolds ..... 55
Chapter 6. The Levi-Civita Connection ..... 69
Chapter 7. Geodesics ..... 81
Chapter 8. The Riemann Curvature Tensor ..... 95
Chapter 9. Curvature and Local Geometry ..... 107

## CHAPTER 1

## Introduction

On the 10th of June 1854 Georg Friedrich Bernhard Riemann (18261866) gave his famous "Habilitationsvortrag" in the Colloquium of the Philosophical Faculty at Göttingen. His talk "Über die Hypothesen, welche der Geometrie zu Grunde liegen" is often said to be the most important in the history of differential geometry. Johann Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777-1855) was in the audience, at the age of 77 , and is said to have been very impressed by his former student.

Riemann's revolutionary ideas generalised the geometry of surfaces which had earlier been initiated by Gauss. Later this lead to an exact definition of the modern concept of an abstract Riemannian manifold.

The development of the 20th century has turned Riemannian geometry into one of the most important parts of modern mathematics. For an excellent survey of this vast field we recommend the following work written by one of the main actors: Marcel Berger, A Panoramic View of Riemannian Geometry, Springer (2003).

## CHAPTER 2

## Differentiable Manifolds

In this chapter we introduce the important notion of a differentiable manifold. This generalises curves and surfaces in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ studied in classical differential geometry. Our manifolds are modelled on the standard differentiable structure on the vector spaces $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ via compatible charts. We give many examples, study their submanifolds and differentiable maps between manifolds.

Let $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ be the standard $m$-dimensional real vector space equipped with the topology induced by the Euclidean metric $d$ on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ given by

$$
d(x, y)=\sqrt{\left(x_{1}-y_{1}\right)^{2}+\ldots+\left(x_{m}-y_{m}\right)^{2}} .
$$

For a non-negative integer $r$ and an open subset $U$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ we shall by $C^{r}\left(U, \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$ denote the $r$-times continuously differentiable maps from $U$ to $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. By smooth maps $U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ we mean the elements of

$$
C^{\infty}\left(U, \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)=\bigcap_{r=0}^{\infty} C^{r}\left(U, \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)
$$

The set of real analytic maps from $U$ to $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ will be denoted by $C^{\omega}\left(U, \mathbb{R}^{n}\right)$. For the theory of real analytic maps we recommend the book: S. G. Krantz and H. R. Parks, A Primer of Real Analytic Functions, Birkhäuser (1992).

Definition 2.1. Let $(M, \mathcal{T})$ be a topological Hausdorff space with a countable basis. Then $M$ is called a topological manifold if there exist a positive integer $m$, for each point $p \in M$ an open neighbourhood $U$ of $p$, an open subset $V$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and a homeomorphism $x: U \rightarrow V$. The pair ( $U, x$ ) is called a chart (or local coordinates) on $M$. The integer $m$ is called the dimension of $M$. To denote that the dimension of $M$ is $m$ we write $M^{m}$.

According to Definition 2.1 a topological manifold $M$ is locally homeomorphic to the standard $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ for some positive integer $m$. We shall now introduce a differentiable structure on $M$ via its charts and turn $M$ into a differentiable manifold.

Definition 2.2. Let $M$ be a topological manifold of dimension $m$. Then a $C^{r}$-atlas on $M$ is a collection

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(U_{\alpha}, x_{\alpha}\right) \mid \alpha \in \mathcal{I}\right\}
$$

of charts on $M$ such that $\mathcal{A}$ covers the whole of $M$ i.e.

$$
M=\bigcup_{\alpha} U_{\alpha}
$$

and for all $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{I}$ the corresponding transition maps

$$
\left.x_{\beta} \circ x_{\alpha}^{-1}\right|_{x_{\alpha}\left(U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta}\right)}: x_{\alpha}\left(U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta}\right) \subset \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

are $r$-times continuously differentiable i.e. of class $C^{r}$.
A chart $(U, x)$ on $M$ is said to be compatible with a $C^{r}$-atlas $\mathcal{A}$ if the union $\mathcal{A} \cup\{(U, x)\}$ is a $C^{r}$-atlas. A $C^{r}$-atlas $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ is said to be maximal if it contains all the charts that are compatible with it. A maximal atlas $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ on $M$ is also called a $C^{r}$-structure on $M$. The pair $(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$ is said to be a $C^{r}$-manifold, or a differentiable manifold of class $C^{r}$, if $M$ is a topological manifold and $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ is a $C^{r}$-structure on $M$. A differentiable manifold is said to be smooth if its transition maps are $C^{\infty}$ and real analytic if they are $C^{\omega}$.

Remark 2.3. It should be noted that a given $C^{r}$-atlas $\mathcal{A}$ on a topological manifold $M$ determines a unique $C^{r}$-structure $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ on $M$ containing $\mathcal{A}$. It simply consists of all charts compatible with $\mathcal{A}$.

Example 2.4. For the standard topological space $\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}, \mathcal{T}_{m}\right)$ we have the trivial $C^{\omega}$-atlas

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}, x\right) \mid x: p \mapsto p\right\}
$$

inducing the standard $C^{\omega}$-structure $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$.
Example 2.5. Let $S^{m}$ denote the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ i.e.

$$
S^{m}=\left\{p \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \mid p_{1}^{2}+\cdots+p_{m+1}^{2}=1\right\}
$$

equipped with the subset topology $\mathcal{T}$ induced by the standard $\mathcal{T}_{m+1}$ on $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$. Let $N$ be the north pole $N=(1,0) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $S$ be the south pole $S=(-1,0)$ on $S^{m}$, respectively. Put $U_{N}=S^{m} \backslash\{N\}$, $U_{S}=S^{m} \backslash\{S\}$ and define $x_{N}: U_{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}, x_{S}: U_{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{N}:\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{m+1}\right) \mapsto \frac{1}{1-p_{1}}\left(p_{2}, \ldots, p_{m+1}\right), \\
& x_{S}:\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{m+1}\right) \mapsto \frac{1}{1+p_{1}}\left(p_{2}, \ldots, p_{m+1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then the transition maps

$$
x_{S} \circ x_{N}^{-1}, x_{N} \circ x_{S}^{-1}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \backslash\{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m} \backslash\{0\}
$$

are both given by

$$
x \mapsto \frac{x}{|x|^{2}},
$$

so $\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(U_{N}, x_{N}\right),\left(U_{S}, x_{S}\right)\right\}$ is a $C^{\omega}$-atlas on $S^{m}$. The $C^{\omega}$-manifold ( $S^{m}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}$ ) is called the $m$-dimensional standard sphere.

Another interesting example of a differentiable manifold is the $m$ dimensional real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$.

Example 2.6. On the set $\mathbb{R}^{m+1} \backslash\{0\}$ we define the equivalence relation $\equiv$ by

$$
p \equiv q \text { if and only if there exists a } \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^{*} \text { such that } p=\lambda q .
$$

Let $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ be the quotient space $\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1} \backslash\{0\}\right) / \equiv$ and

$$
\pi: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \backslash\{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} P^{m}
$$

be the natural projection mapping a point $p \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \backslash\{0\}$ onto the equivalence class $[p] \in \mathbb{R} P^{m}$ i.e. the line

$$
[p]=\left\{\lambda p \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^{*}\right\}
$$

through the origin generated by $p$. Equip $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ with the quotient topology $\mathcal{T}$ induced by $\pi$ and $\mathcal{T}_{m+1}$ on $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$. For $k \in\{1, \ldots, m+1\}$ define the open subset

$$
U_{k}=\left\{[p] \in \mathbb{R} P^{m} \mid p_{k} \neq 0\right\}
$$

of $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ and the charts $x_{k}: U_{k} \subset \mathbb{R} P^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ by

$$
x_{k}:[p] \mapsto\left(\frac{p_{1}}{p_{k}}, \ldots, \frac{p_{k-1}}{p_{k}}, 1, \frac{p_{k+1}}{p_{k}}, \ldots, \frac{p_{m+1}}{p_{k}}\right) .
$$

If $[p]=[q]$ then $p=\lambda q$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^{*}$ so $p_{l} / p_{k}=q_{l} / q_{k}$ for all $l$. This means that the map $x_{k}$ is well defined for all $k$. The corresponding transition maps

$$
\left.x_{k} \circ x_{l}^{-1}\right|_{x_{l}\left(U_{l} \cap U_{k}\right)}: x_{l}\left(U_{l} \cap U_{k}\right) \subset \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

are given by

$$
\left(\frac{p_{1}}{p_{l}}, \ldots, \frac{p_{l-1}}{p_{l}}, 1, \frac{p_{l+1}}{p_{l}}, \ldots, \frac{p_{m+1}}{p_{l}}\right) \mapsto\left(\frac{p_{1}}{p_{k}}, \ldots, \frac{p_{k-1}}{p_{k}}, 1, \frac{p_{k+1}}{p_{k}}, \ldots, \frac{p_{m+1}}{p_{k}}\right)
$$

so the collection

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(U_{k}, x_{k}\right) \mid k=1, \ldots, m+1\right\}
$$

is a $C^{\omega}$-atlas on $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$. The differentiable manifold $\left(\mathbb{R} P^{m}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}\right)$ is called the $m$-dimensional real projective space.

Example 2.7. Let $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ be the extended complex plane given by

$$
\hat{\mathbb{C}}=\mathbb{C} \cup\{\infty\}
$$

and put $\mathbb{C}^{*}=\mathbb{C} \backslash\{0\}, U_{0}=\mathbb{C}$ and $U_{\infty}=\hat{\mathbb{C}} \backslash\{0\}$. Then define the charts $x_{0}: U_{0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ and $x_{\infty}: U_{\infty} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ on $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ by $x_{0}: z \mapsto z$ and $x_{\infty}: w \mapsto 1 / w$, respectively. The corresponding transition maps

$$
x_{\infty} \circ x_{0}^{-1}, x_{0} \circ x_{\infty}^{-1}: \mathbb{C}^{*} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{*}
$$

are both given by $z \mapsto 1 / z$ so $\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(U_{0}, x_{0}\right),\left(U_{\infty}, x_{\infty}\right)\right\}$ is a $C^{\omega}$-atlas on $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$. The real analytic manifold $(\hat{\mathbb{C}}, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$ is called the Riemann sphere.

For the product of two differentiable manifolds we have the following important result.

Proposition 2.8. Let $\left(M_{1}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}\right)$ and $\left(M_{2}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}\right)$ be two differentiable manifolds of class $C^{r}$. Let $M=M_{1} \times M_{2}$ be the product space with the product topology. Then there exists an atlas $\mathcal{A}$ on $M$ turning $(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$ into a differentiable manifold of class $C^{r}$ and the dimension of $M$ satisfies

$$
\operatorname{dim} M=\operatorname{dim} M_{1}+\operatorname{dim} M_{2}
$$

Proof. See Exercise 2.1.
The concept of a submanifold of a given differentiable manifold will play an important role as we go along and we shall be especially interested in the connection between the geometry of a submanifold and that of its ambient space.

Definition 2.9. Let $m, n$ be positive integers with $m \leq n$ and $\left(N^{n}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}\right)$ be a $C^{r}$-manifold. A subset $M$ of $N$ is said to be a submanifold of $N$ if for each point $p \in M$ there exists a chart $\left(U_{p}, x_{p}\right) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}$ such that $p \in U_{p}$ and $x_{p}: U_{p} \subset N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-m}$ satisfies

$$
x_{p}\left(U_{p} \cap M\right)=x_{p}\left(U_{p}\right) \cap\left(\mathbb{R}^{m} \times\{0\}\right)
$$

The natural number $(n-m)$ is called the codimension of $M$ in $N$.
Proposition 2.10. Let $m, n$ be positive integers with $m \leq n$ and $\left(N^{n}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}\right)$ be a $C^{r}$-manifold. Let $M$ be a submanifold of $N$ equipped with the subset topology and $\pi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ be the natural projection onto the first factor. Then

$$
\mathcal{A}_{M}=\left\{\left(U_{p} \cap M,\left.\left(\pi \circ x_{p}\right)\right|_{U_{p} \cap M}\right) \mid p \in M\right\}
$$

is a $C^{r}$-atlas for $M$. Hence the pair $\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}\right)$ is an m-dimensional $C^{r}{ }_{-}$ manifold. The differentiable structure $\hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}$ on $M$ is called the induced structure by $\hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}$.

Proof. See Exercise 2.2.
Remark 2.11. Our next aim is to prove Theorem 2.15 which is a useful tool for the construction of submanifolds of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. For this we use the classical inverse function theorem stated below. Note that if

$$
F: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

is a differentiable map defined on an open subset $U$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ then its differential $d F_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ at the point $p \in U$ is a linear map given by the $n \times m$ matrix

$$
d F_{p}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial F_{1} / \partial x_{1}(p) & \ldots & \partial F_{1} / \partial x_{m}(p) \\
\vdots & & \vdots \\
\partial F_{n} / \partial x_{1}(p) & \ldots & \partial F_{n} / \partial x_{m}(p)
\end{array}\right) .
$$

If $\gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow U$ is a curve in $U$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ then the composition $F \circ \gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a curve in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ and according to the chain rule we have

$$
d F_{p} \cdot v=\left.\frac{d}{d s}(F \circ \gamma(s))\right|_{s=0}
$$

This is the tangent vector of the curve $F \circ \gamma$ at $F(p) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$.

The above shows that the differential $d F_{p}$ can be seen as a linear map that maps tangent vectors at $p \in U$ to tangent vectors at the image point $F(p) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$. This will later be generalised to the manifold setting.

We now state the classical inverse function theorem well known from multivariable analysis.

Fact 2.12. Let $U$ be an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $F: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ be a $C^{r}$-map. If $p \in U$ and the differential

$$
d F_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

of $F$ at $p$ is invertible then there exist open neighbourhoods $U_{p}$ around $p$ and $U_{q}$ around $q=F(p)$ such that $\hat{F}=\left.F\right|_{U_{p}}: U_{p} \rightarrow U_{q}$ is bijective and the inverse $(\hat{F})^{-1}: U_{q} \rightarrow U_{p}$ is a $C^{r}$-map. The differential $\left(d \hat{F}^{-1}\right)_{q}$ of $\hat{F}^{-1}$ at $q$ satisfies

$$
\left(d \hat{F}^{-1}\right)_{q}=\left(d F_{p}\right)^{-1}
$$

i.e. it is the inverse of the differential $d F_{p}$ of $F$ at $p$.

Before stating the classical implicit function theorem we remind the reader of the following well known notions.

Definition 2.13. Let $m, n$ be positive natural numbers, $U$ be an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $F: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be a $C^{r}$-map. A point $p \in U$ is said to be regular for $F$, if the differential

$$
d F_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

is of full rank, but critical otherwise. A point $q \in F(U)$ is said to be a regular value of $F$ if every point in the pre-image $F^{-1}(\{q\})$ of $q$ is regular.

Remark 2.14. Note that if $m, n$ are positive integers with $m \geq n$ then $p \in U$ is a regular point for

$$
F=\left(F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n}\right): U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

if and only if the gradients $\operatorname{grad} F_{1}, \ldots, \operatorname{grad} F_{n}$ of the coordinate functions $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are linearly independent at $p$, or equivalently, the differential $d F_{p}$ of $F$ at $p$ satisfies the following condition

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(d F_{p} \cdot\left(d F_{p}\right)^{t}\right) \neq 0
$$

Theorem 2.15 (The Implicit Function Theorem). Let $m$, $n$ be positive integers with $m>n$ and $F: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be a $C^{r}$-map from an open subset $U$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. If $q \in F(U)$ is a regular value of $F$ then the pre-image $F^{-1}(\{q\})$ of $q$ is an $(m-n)$-dimensional submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ of class $C^{r}$.

Proof. Let $p$ be an element of $F^{-1}(\{q\})$ and $K_{p}$ be the kernel of the differential $d F_{p}$ i.e. the $(m-n)$-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ given by $K_{p}=\left\{v \in \mathbb{R}^{m} \mid d F_{p} \cdot v=0\right\}$. Let $\pi_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m-n}$ be a linear map such that $\left.\pi_{p}\right|_{K_{p}}: K_{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m-n}$ is bijective, $\left.\pi_{p}\right|_{K_{p}^{\perp}}=0$ and define the $\operatorname{map} G_{p}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n} \times \mathbb{R}^{m-n}$ by

$$
G_{p}: x \mapsto\left(F(x), \pi_{p}(x)\right)
$$

Then the differential $\left(d G_{p}\right)_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ of $G_{p}$, with respect to the decompositions $\mathbb{R}^{m}=K_{p}^{\perp} \oplus K_{p}$ and $\mathbb{R}^{m}=\mathbb{R}^{n} \oplus \mathbb{R}^{m-n}$, is given by

$$
\left(d G_{p}\right)_{p}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\left.d F_{p}\right|_{K_{p}^{\perp}} & 0 \\
0 & \pi_{p}
\end{array}\right)
$$

hence bijective. It now follows from the inverse function theorem that there exist open neighbourhoods $V_{p}$ around $p$ and $W_{p}$ around $G_{p}(p)$ such that $\hat{G}_{p}=\left.G_{p}\right|_{V_{p}}: V_{p} \rightarrow W_{p}$ is bijective, the inverse $\hat{G}_{p}^{-1}: W_{p} \rightarrow V_{p}$ is $C^{r}, d\left(\hat{G}_{p}^{-1}\right)_{G_{p}(p)}=\left(d G_{p}\right)_{p}^{-1}$ and $d\left(\hat{G}_{p}^{-1}\right)_{y}$ is bijective for all $y \in W_{p}$. Now put $\tilde{U}_{p}=F^{-1}(\{q\}) \cap V_{p}$ then

$$
\tilde{U}_{p}=\hat{G}_{p}^{-1}\left(\left(\{q\} \times \mathbb{R}^{m-n}\right) \cap W_{p}\right)
$$

so if $\pi: \mathbb{R}^{n} \times \mathbb{R}^{m-n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m-n}$ is the natural projection onto the second factor, then the map

$$
\tilde{x}_{p}=\pi \circ G_{p} \mid \tilde{U}_{p}: \tilde{U}_{p} \rightarrow\left(\{q\} \times \mathbb{R}^{m-n}\right) \cap W_{p} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m-n}
$$

is a chart on the open neighbourhood $\tilde{U}_{p}$ of $p$. The point $q \in F(U)$ is a regular value so the set

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(\tilde{U}_{p}, \tilde{x}_{p}\right) \mid p \in F^{-1}(\{q\})\right\}
$$

is a $C^{r}$-atlas for $F^{-1}(\{q\})$.
Employing the implicit function theorem, we obtain the following interesting examples of the $m$-dimensional sphere $S^{m}$ and its tangent bundle $T S^{m}$ as differentiable submanifolds of $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ and $\mathbb{R}^{2 m+2}$, respectively.

Example 2.16. Let $F: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the $C^{\omega}$-map given by

$$
F:\left(p_{1}, \ldots, p_{m+1}\right) \mapsto p_{1}^{2}+\cdots+p_{m+1}^{2} .
$$

Then the differential $d F_{p}$ of $F$ at $p$ is given by $d F_{p}=2 p$, so

$$
d F_{p} \cdot\left(d F_{p}\right)^{t}=4|p|^{2} \in \mathbb{R} .
$$

This means that $1 \in \mathbb{R}$ is a regular value of $F$ so the fibre

$$
S^{m}=\left\{\left.p \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1}| | p\right|^{2}=1\right\}=F^{-1}(\{1\})
$$

of $F$ is an $m$-dimensional submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$. This is the standard $m$-dimensional sphere introduced in Example 2.5.

Example 2.17. Let $F: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \times \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2}$ be the $C^{\omega}$-map defined by $F:(p, v) \mapsto\left(\left(|p|^{2}-1\right) / 2,\langle p, v\rangle\right)$. Then the differential $d F_{(p, v)}$ of $F$ at $(p, v)$ satisfies

$$
d F_{(p, v)}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
p & 0 \\
v & p
\end{array}\right)
$$

A simple calculation shows that

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(d F \cdot(d F)^{t}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
|p|^{2} & \langle p, v\rangle \\
\langle p, v\rangle & |v|^{2}+|p|^{2}
\end{array}\right)=1+|v|^{2}>0
$$

on $F^{-1}(\{0\})$. This means that

$$
F^{-1}(\{0\})=\left\{(p, v) \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \times\left.\mathbb{R}^{m+1}| | p\right|^{2}=1 \text { and }\langle p, v\rangle=0\right\},
$$

which we denote by $T S^{m}$, is a $2 m$-dimensional submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{2 m+2}$. We will later see that $T S^{m}$ is what is called the tangent bundle of the $m$-dimensional sphere $S^{m}$.

We now apply the implicit function theorem to construct the important orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ as a submanifold of the set of the real vector space of $m \times m$ matrices $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$.

Example 2.18. Let $\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ be the $m(m+1) / 2$ dimensional linear subspace of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ consisting of all symmetric $m \times m$ matrices

$$
\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)=\left\{y \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid y^{t}=y\right\} .
$$

Let $F: \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ be the map defined by

$$
F: x \mapsto x^{t} x .
$$

If $\gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ is a curve in $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ then

$$
\frac{d}{d s}(F \circ \gamma(s))=\dot{\gamma}(s)^{t} \gamma(s)+\gamma(s)^{t} \dot{\gamma}(s)
$$

so the differential $d F_{x}$ of $F$ at $x \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ satisfies

$$
d F_{x}: X \mapsto X^{t} x+x^{t} X
$$

This means that for an arbitrary element $p$ in

$$
\mathbf{O}(m)=F^{-1}(\{e\})=\left\{p \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid p^{t} p=e\right\}
$$

and $Y \in \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ we have $d F_{p}(p Y / 2)=Y$. Hence the differential $d F_{p}$ is surjective, so the identity matrix $e \in \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ is a regular value of $F$. Following the implicit function theorem $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is a submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ of dimension $m(m-1) / 2$. The set $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is the well known orthogonal group.

The concept of a differentiable map $U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$, defined on an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$, can be generalised to mappings between manifolds. We will see that the most important properties of these objects in the classical case are also valid in the manifold setting.

Definition 2.19. Let $\left(M^{m}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}\right)$ and $\left(N^{n}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}\right)$ be $C^{r}$-manifolds. A map $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ is said to be differentiable of class $C^{r}$ if for all charts $(U, x) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}$ and $(V, y) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}$ the map

$$
\left.y \circ \phi \circ x^{-1}\right|_{x\left(U \cap \phi^{-1}(V)\right)}: x\left(U \cap \phi^{-1}(V)\right) \subset \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

is of class $C^{r}$. A differentiable map $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ defined on an open interval of $\mathbb{R}$ is called a differentiable curve in $M$. A differentiable map $f: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ with values in $\mathbb{R}$ is called a differentiable function on $M$. The set of smooth functions defined on $M$ is denoted by $C^{\infty}(M)$.

It is an easy exercise, using Definition 2.19, to prove the following result concerning the composition of differentiable maps between manifolds.

Proposition 2.20. Let $\left(M_{1}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}\right),\left(M_{2}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}\right),\left(M_{3}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{3}\right)$ be $C^{r}$-manifolds and $\phi:\left(M_{1}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}\right) \rightarrow\left(M_{2}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}\right), \psi:\left(M_{2}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}\right) \rightarrow\left(M_{3}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{3}\right)$ be differentiable maps of class $C^{r}$. Then the composition $\psi \circ \phi:\left(M_{1}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}\right) \rightarrow$ $\left(M_{3}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{3}\right)$ is a differentiable map of class $C^{r}$.

Proof. See Exercise 2.5.
Definition 2.21. Two manifolds $\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}\right)$ and $\left(N, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}\right)$ of class $C^{r}$ are said to be diffeomorphic if there exists a bijective $C^{r}$-map $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ such that the inverse $\phi^{-1}: N \rightarrow M$ is of class $C^{r}$. In that case the map $\phi$ is called a diffeomorphism between $\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}\right)$ and ( $N, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}$ ).

Proposition 2.22. Let $(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$ be an $m$-dimensional $C^{r}$-manifold and $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$. Then the bijective continuous map $x$ : $U \rightarrow x(U) \subset \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a diffeomorphism.

Proof. See Exercise 2.6.
It can be shown that the 2-dimensional sphere $S^{2}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ and the Riemann sphere $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ are diffeomorphic, see Exercise 2.7.

Definition 2.23. For a differentiable manifold $(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$ we denote by $\mathcal{D}(M)$ the set of all its diffeomorphisms. If $\phi, \psi \in \mathcal{D}(M)$ then it is clear that the composition $\psi \circ \phi$ and the inverse $\phi^{-1}$ are also diffeomorphisms. The pair $(\mathcal{D}(M), \circ)$ is called the diffeomorphism group of $(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$. The operation is clearly associative and the identity map is its neutral element.

Definition 2.24. Two $C^{r}$-structures $\hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}$ and $\hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}$ on the same topological manifold $M$ are said to be different if the identity map $\operatorname{id}_{M}$ : $\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}\right) \rightarrow\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}\right)$ is not a diffeomorphism.

It can be seen that even the real line $\mathbb{R}$ carries infinitely many different differentiable structures, see Exercise 2.8.

Deep Result 2.25. Let $\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}\right)$, $\left(N, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}\right)$ be differentiable manifolds of class $C^{r}$ of the same dimension $m$. If $M$ and $N$ are homeomorphic as topological spaces and $m \leq 3$ then $\left(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{M}\right)$ and $\left(N, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{N}\right)$ are diffeomorphic.

The following remarkable result was proven by John Milnor in his famous paper: Differentiable structures on spheres, Amer. J. Math. 81 (1959), 962-972.

Deep Result 2.26. The 7-dimensional sphere $S^{7}$ has exactly 28 different differentiable structures.

The next very useful result generalises a classical result from real analysis of several variables.

Proposition 2.27. Let $\left(N_{1}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{1}\right)$ and $\left(N_{2}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{2}\right)$ be two differentiable manifolds of class $C^{r}$ and $M_{1}, M_{2}$ be submanifolds of $N_{1}$ and $N_{2}$, respectively. If $\phi: N_{1} \rightarrow N_{2}$ is a differentiable map of class $C^{r}$ such that $\phi\left(M_{1}\right)$ is contained in $M_{2}$ then the restriction $\left.\phi\right|_{M_{1}}: M_{1} \rightarrow M_{2}$ is differentiable of class $C^{r}$.

Proof. See Exercise 2.9.
Example 2.28. The following maps are all smooth.
(i) $\phi_{1}: \mathbb{R}^{1} \rightarrow S^{1} \subset \mathbb{C}, \phi_{1}: t \mapsto e^{i t}$,
(ii) $\phi_{2}: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \backslash\{0\} \rightarrow S^{m} \subset \mathbb{R}^{m+1}, \phi_{2}: x \mapsto x /|x|$,
(iii) $\phi_{3}: S^{2} \subset \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow S^{3} \subset \mathbb{R}^{4}, \phi_{3}:(x, y, z) \mapsto(x, y, z, 0)$,
(iv) $\phi_{4}: S^{3} \subset \mathbb{C}^{2} \rightarrow S^{2} \subset \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{R}, \phi_{4}:\left(z_{1}, z_{2}\right) \mapsto\left(2 z_{1} \bar{z}_{2},\left|z_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|z_{2}\right|^{2}\right)$,
(v) $\phi_{6}: S^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} P^{m}, \phi_{6}: x \mapsto[x]$.
(vi) $\phi_{5}: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \backslash\{0\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} P^{m}, \phi_{5}: x \mapsto[x]$,

In differential geometry we are especially interested in manifolds carrying a group structure compatible with their differentiable structures. Such manifolds are named after the famous mathematician Sophus Lie (1842-1899) and will play an important role throughout this work.

Definition 2.29. A Lie group is a smooth manifold $G$ with a group structure • such that the map $\rho: G \times G \rightarrow G$ with

$$
\rho:(p, q) \mapsto p \cdot q^{-1}
$$

is smooth. For an element $p$ in $G$ the left translation by $p$ is the map $L_{p}: G \rightarrow G$ defined by $L_{p}: q \mapsto p \cdot q$.

Example 2.30. Let ( $\left.\mathbb{R}^{m},+, \cdot\right)$ be the $m$-dimensional vector space equipped with its standard differential structure. Then $\left(\mathbb{R}^{m},+\right)$ with $\rho: \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ given by

$$
\rho:(p, q) \mapsto p-q
$$

is a Lie group.
Proposition 2.31. Let $G$ be a Lie group and $p$ be an element of $G$. Then the left translation $L_{p}: G \rightarrow G$ is a smooth diffeomorphism.

Proof. See Exercise 2.11
Proposition 2.32. Let $(G, \cdot)$ be a Lie group and $K$ be a submanifold of $G$ which is a subgroup. Then $(K, \cdot)$ is a Lie group.

Proof. The statement is a direct consequence of Definition 2.29 and Proposition 2.27.

The set of non-zero complex numbers ( $\left.\mathbb{C}^{*}, \cdot\right)$, together with the standard multiplication, form a Lie group. The unit circle ( $\left.S^{1}, \cdot\right)$ is an interesting compact Lie subgroup of $\left(\mathbb{C}^{*}, \cdot\right)$. Another subgroup is the set of the non-zero real numbers $\left(\mathbb{R}^{*}, \cdot\right)$ containing the positive real numbers $\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}, \cdot\right)$ as a subgroup.

Definition 2.33. Let $(G, \cdot)$ be a group and $V$ be a vector space. Then a linear representation of $G$ on $V$ is a map $\rho: G \rightarrow \boldsymbol{\operatorname { A u t }}(V)$ into the space of automorphisms of V i.e. the invertible linear endomorphisms such that for all $g, h \in G$ we have

$$
\rho(g \cdot h)=\rho(g) * \rho(h) .
$$

Here $*$ denotes the matrix multiplication in $\operatorname{Aut}(V)$.
Example 2.34. The Lie group of non-zero complex numbers $\left(\mathbb{C}^{*}, \cdot\right)$ has a well known linear representation $\rho: \mathbb{C}^{*} \rightarrow \operatorname{Aut}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}\right)$ given by

$$
\rho: a+i b \mapsto\left(\begin{array}{cc}
a & b \\
-b & a
\end{array}\right)
$$

This is obviously injective and it respects the standard multiplicative structures of $\mathbb{C}^{*}$ and $\mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}$ i.e.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho((a+i b) \cdot(x+i y)) & =\rho((a x-b y)+i(a y+b x)) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
a x-b y & a y+b x \\
-(a y+b x) & a x-b y
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
a & b \\
-b & a
\end{array}\right) *\left(\begin{array}{cc}
x & y \\
-y & x
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\rho(a+i b) * \rho(x+i y) .
\end{aligned}
$$

As an introduction to Example 2.36 we now play the same game in the complex case.

Example 2.35. Let $\rho: \mathbb{C}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{2 \times 2}$ be the real linear map given by

$$
\rho:(z, w) \mapsto\left(\begin{array}{cc}
z & w \\
-\bar{w} & \bar{z}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Then an easy calculation shows that the following is true

$$
\begin{aligned}
\rho\left(z_{1}, w_{1}\right) * \rho\left(z_{2}, w_{2}\right) & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
z_{1} & w_{1} \\
-\bar{w}_{1} & \bar{z}_{1}
\end{array}\right) *\left(\begin{array}{cc}
z_{2} & w_{2} \\
-\bar{w}_{2} & \bar{z}_{2}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
z_{1} z_{2}-w_{1} \bar{w}_{2} & z_{1} w_{2}+w_{1} \bar{z}_{2} \\
-\bar{z}_{1} \bar{w}_{2}-\bar{w}_{1} z_{2} & \bar{z}_{1} \bar{z}_{2}-\bar{w}_{1} w_{2}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=\rho\left(z_{1} z_{2}-w_{1} \bar{w}_{2}, z_{1} w_{2}+w_{1} \bar{z}_{2}\right)
$$

Example 2.36. Let $\mathbb{H}$ be the set of quaternions given by

$$
\mathbb{H}=\{z+w j \mid z, w \in \mathbb{C}\} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2}
$$

We equip $\mathbb{H}$ with an addition, a multiplication and the conjugation satisfying
(i) $\overline{(z+w j)}=\bar{z}-w j$,
(ii) $\left(z_{1}+w_{1} j\right)+\left(z_{2}+w_{2} j\right)=\left(z_{1}+z_{2}\right)+\left(w_{1}+w_{2}\right) j$,
(iii) $\left(z_{1}+w_{1} j\right) \cdot\left(z_{2}+w_{2} j\right)=\left(z_{1} z_{2}-w_{1} \bar{w}_{2}\right)+\left(z_{1} w_{2}+w_{1} \bar{z}_{2}\right) j$.

These extend the standard operations on $\mathbb{C}$ as a subset of $\mathbb{H}$. It is easily seen that the non-zero quaternions $\left(\mathbb{H}^{*}, \cdot\right)$ form a Lie group. On $\mathbb{H}$ we define the quaternionic scalar product

$$
\mathbb{H} \times \mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{H}, \quad(p, q) \mapsto p \cdot \bar{q}
$$

and a real-valued norm given by $|p|^{2}=p \cdot \bar{p}$. Then the 3 -dimensional unit sphere $S^{3}$ in $\mathbb{H} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2} \cong \mathbb{R}^{4}$, with the restricted multiplication, forms a compact Lie subgroup $\left(S^{3}, \cdot\right)$ of $\left(\mathbb{H}^{*}, \cdot\right)$. They are both nonabelian.

We shall now introduce some of the classical real and complex matrix Lie groups. As a reference on this topic we recommend the wonderful book: A. W. Knapp, Lie Groups Beyond an Introduction, Birkhäuser (2002).

Example 2.37. Let Nil be the subset of $\mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$ given by

$$
\mathrm{Nil}=\left\{\left.\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & x & z \\
0 & 1 & y \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3} \right\rvert\, x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}\right\}
$$

Then Nil has a natural differentiable structure determined by the global coordinates $\phi:$ Nil $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3}$ with

$$
\phi:\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & x & z \\
0 & 1 & y \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) \mapsto(x, y, z) .
$$

It is easily seen that if $*$ is the standard matrix multiplication, then $(\mathrm{Nil}, *)$ is a Lie group.

Example 2.38. Let Sol be the subset of $\mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$ given by

$$
\mathrm{Sol}=\left\{\left.\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{z} & 0 & x \\
0 & e^{-z} & y \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3} \right\rvert\, x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}\right\}
$$

Then Sol has a natural differentiable structure determined by the global coordinates $\phi:$ Sol $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3}$ with

$$
\phi:\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{z} & 0 & x \\
0 & e^{-z} & y \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) \mapsto(x, y, z)
$$

It is easily seen that if $*$ is the standard matrix multiplication, then $(\mathrm{Sol}, *)$ is a Lie group.

Example 2.39. The set of invertible real $m \times m$ matrices

$$
\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})=\left\{A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{det} A \neq 0\right\}
$$

equipped with the standard matrix multiplication has the structure of a Lie group. It is called the real general linear group and its neutral element $e$ is the identity matrix. The subset $\mathbf{G L} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ is open so $\operatorname{dim} \mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})=m^{2}$.

As a subgroup of $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ we have the real special linear group $\mathrm{SL}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ given by

$$
\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})=\left\{A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{det} A=1\right\}
$$

We will show in Example 3.10 that the dimension of the submanifold $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ is $m^{2}-1$.

Another subgroup of $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ is the orthogonal group

$$
\mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid A^{t} A=e\right\} .
$$

As we have already seen in Example 2.18 the dimension of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is $m(m-1) / 2$.

As a subgroup of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ and $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ we have the special orthogonal group $\mathbf{S O}(m)$ which is defined as

$$
\mathbf{S O}(m)=\mathbf{O}(m) \cap \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})
$$

It can be shown that $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is diffeomorphic to $\mathbf{S O}(m) \times \mathbf{O}(1)$, see Exercise 2.10. Note that $\mathbf{O}(1)=\{ \pm 1\}$ so $\mathbf{O}(m)$ can be seen as double cover of $\mathbf{S O}(m)$. This means that

$$
\operatorname{dim} \mathbf{S O}(m)=\operatorname{dim} \mathbf{O}(m)=m(m-1) / 2
$$

Example 2.40. The set of invertible complex $m \times m$ matrices

$$
\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})=\left\{A \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{det} A \neq 0\right\}
$$

equipped with the standard matrix multiplication has the structure of a Lie group. It is called the complex general linear group and its neutral element $e$ is the identity matrix. The subset $\mathbf{G L} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})$ of $\mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ is open so $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})\right)=2 m^{2}$.

As a subgroup of $\mathbf{G L} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})$ we have the complex special linear group $\mathrm{SL}_{m}(\mathbb{C})$ given by

$$
\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})=\left\{A \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{det} A=1\right\}
$$

The dimension of the submanifold $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})$ of $\mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ is $2\left(m^{2}-1\right)$.
Another subgroup of $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})$ is the unitary group $\mathbf{U}(m)$ given by

$$
\mathbf{U}(m)=\left\{A \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m} \mid \bar{A}^{t} A=e\right\} .
$$

Calculations similar to those for the orthogonal group show that the dimension of $\mathbf{U}(m)$ is $m^{2}$.

As a subgroup of $\mathbf{U}(m)$ and $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})$ we have the special unitary group $\mathbf{S U}(m)$ which is defined as

$$
\mathbf{S U}(m)=\mathbf{U}(m) \cap \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})
$$

It can be shown that $\mathbf{U}(1)$ is diffeomorphic to the circle $S^{1}$ and that $\mathbf{U}(m)$ is diffeomorphic to $\mathbf{S} \mathbf{U}(m) \times \mathbf{U}(1)$, see Exercise 2.10. This means that $\operatorname{dim} \mathbf{S U}(m)=m^{2}-1$.

For the rest of this work we assume, when not stating otherwise, that our manifolds and maps are smooth i.e. in the $C^{\infty}$-category.

## Exercises

Exercise 2.1. Find a proof of Proposition 2.8.
Exercise 2.2. Find a proof of Proposition 2.10.
Exercise 2.3. Let $S^{1}$ be the unit circle in the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$ given by $S^{1}=\left\{\left.z \in \mathbb{C}| | z\right|^{2}=1\right\}$. Use the maps $x: \mathbb{C} \backslash\{i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ and $y: \mathbb{C} \backslash\{-i\} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ with

$$
x: z \mapsto \frac{i+z}{1+i z}, \quad y: z \mapsto \frac{1+i z}{i+z}
$$

to show that $S^{1}$ is a 1 -dimensional submanifold of $\mathbb{C} \cong \mathbb{R}^{2}$.
Exercise 2.4. Use the implicit function theorem to show that the $m$-dimensional torus

$$
\begin{aligned}
T^{m} & =\left\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{m} \mid x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}=\cdots=x_{m}^{2}+y_{m}^{2}=1\right\} \\
& \cong\left\{\left.z \in \mathbb{C}^{m}| | z_{1}\right|^{2}=\cdots=\left|z_{m}\right|^{2}=1\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

is a differentiable submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{2 m} \cong \mathbb{C}^{m}$.
Exercise 2.5. Find a proof of Proposition 2.20.
Exercise 2.6. Find a proof of Proposition 2.22.
Exercise 2.7. Prove that the 2-dimensional sphere $S^{2}$ as a differentiable submanifold of the standard $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ and the Riemann sphere $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ are diffeomorphic.

Exercise 2.8. Equip the real line $\mathbb{R}$ with the standard topology and for each odd integer $k \in \mathbb{Z}^{+}$let $\hat{\mathcal{A}}_{k}$ be the $C^{\omega}$-structure defined on $\mathbb{R}$ by the atlas

$$
\mathcal{A}_{k}=\left\{\left(\mathbb{R}, x_{k}\right) \mid x_{k}: p \mapsto p^{k}\right\} .
$$

Show that the differentiable structures $\hat{\mathcal{A}}_{k}$ are all different but that the differentiable manifolds $\left(\mathbb{R}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{k}\right)$ are all diffeomorphic.

Exercise 2.9. Find a proof of Proposition 2.27.
Exercise 2.10. Let the spheres $S^{1}, S^{3}$ and the Lie groups $\mathbf{S O}(n)$, $\mathbf{O}(n), \mathbf{S U}(n), \mathbf{U}(n)$ be equipped with their standard differentiable structures. Use Proposition 2.27 to prove the following diffeomorphisms

$$
\begin{aligned}
S^{1} \cong \mathbf{S O}(2), & S^{3} \cong \mathbf{S U}(2) \\
\mathbf{S O}(n) \times \mathbf{O}(1) \cong \mathbf{O}(n), & \mathbf{S U}(n) \times \mathbf{U}(1) \cong \mathbf{U}(n)
\end{aligned}
$$

Exercise 2.11. Find a proof of Proposition 2.31.
Exercise 2.12. Let $(G, *)$ and $(H, \cdot)$ be two Lie groups. Prove that the product manifold $G \times H$ has the structure of a Lie group.

## CHAPTER 3

## The Tangent Space

In this chapter we introduce the notion of the tangent space $T_{p} M$ of a differentiable manifold $M$ at a point $p \in M$. This is a vector space of the same dimension as $M$. We start by studying the standard $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and show how a tangent vector $v$ at a point $p \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ can be interpreted as a first order linear differential operator, annihilating constants, when acting on real-valued functions locally defined around $p$. Then we generalise to the manifold setting. To explain the notion of the tangent space we give several examples. Here the Lie classical Lie groups, introduced in Chapter 2, play an important role.

Let $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ be the $m$-dimensional real vector space with the standard differentiable structure. If $p$ is a point in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $\gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a $C^{1}$-curve such that $\gamma(0)=p$ then the tangent vector

$$
\dot{\gamma}(0)=\lim _{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\gamma(t)-\gamma(0)}{t}
$$

of $\gamma$ at $p$ is an element of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. Conversely, for an arbitrary element $v$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ we can easily find a curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$. One example is given by

$$
\gamma: t \mapsto p+t \cdot v .
$$

This shows that the tangent space i.e. the set of tangent vectors at the point $p \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ can be identified with $\mathbb{R}^{m}$.

We shall now describe how first order differential operators annihilating constants can be interpreted as tangent vectors. For a point $p$ in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ we denote by $\varepsilon(p)$ the set of differentiable real-valued functions defined locally around $p$. Then it is well known from multivariable analysis that if $v \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $f \in \varepsilon(p)$ then the directional derivative $\partial_{v} f$ of $f$ at $p$ in the direction of $v$ is given by

$$
\partial_{v} f=\lim _{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(p+t v)-f(p)}{t} .
$$

Furthermore the operator $\partial$ has the following properties

$$
\partial_{v}(\lambda \cdot f+\mu \cdot g)=\lambda \cdot \partial_{v} f+\mu \cdot \partial_{v} g
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\partial_{v}(f \cdot g) & =\partial_{v} f \cdot g(p)+f(p) \cdot \partial_{v} g, \\
\partial_{(\lambda \cdot v+\mu \cdot w)} f & =\lambda \cdot \partial_{v} f+\mu \cdot \partial_{w} f
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}, v, w \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $f, g \in \varepsilon(p)$.
Definition 3.1. For a point $p$ in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ let $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ be the set of first order linear differential operators at $p$ annihilating constants i.e. the set of mappings $\alpha: \varepsilon(p) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that
(i) $\alpha(\lambda \cdot f+\mu \cdot g)=\lambda \cdot \alpha(f)+\mu \cdot \alpha(g)$,
(ii) $\alpha(f \cdot g)=\alpha(f) \cdot g(p)+f(p) \cdot \alpha(g)$
for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f, g \in \varepsilon(p)$.
The set of diffential operators $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ carries the structure of a real vector space. This is given by the addition + and the multiplication . by real numbers satisfying

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\alpha+\beta)(f) & =\alpha(f)+\beta(f) \\
(\lambda \cdot \alpha)(f) & =\lambda \cdot \alpha(f)
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $\alpha, \beta \in T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}, f \in \varepsilon(p)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.
Theorem 3.2. For a point $p$ in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ the map $\Phi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ defined by $\Phi: v \mapsto \partial_{v}$ is a linear vector space isomorphism.

Proof. The linearity of the map $\Phi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ follows directly from the fact that for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}, v, w \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $f \in \varepsilon(p)$

$$
\partial_{(\lambda \cdot v+\mu \cdot w)} f=\lambda \cdot \partial_{v} f+\mu \cdot \partial_{w} f
$$

Let $v, w \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ be such that $v \neq w$. Choose an element $u \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ such that $\langle u, v\rangle \neq\langle u, w\rangle$ and define $f: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $f(x)=\langle u, x\rangle$. Then $\partial_{v} f=\langle u, v\rangle \neq\langle u, w\rangle=\partial_{w} f$ so $\partial_{v} \neq \partial_{w}$. This proves that the linear map $\Phi$ is injective.

Let $\alpha$ be an arbitrary element of $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$. For $k=1, \ldots, m$ let the real-valued function $\hat{x}_{k}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the natural projection onto the $k$-th component given by

$$
\hat{x}_{k}:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \mapsto x_{k}
$$

and put $v_{k}=\alpha\left(\hat{x}_{k}\right)$. For the constant function $1:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \mapsto 1$ we have

$$
\alpha(1)=\alpha(1 \cdot 1)=1 \cdot \alpha(1)+1 \cdot \alpha(1)=2 \cdot \alpha(1)
$$

so $\alpha(1)=0$. By the linearity of $\alpha$ it follows that $\alpha(c)=0$ for any constant $c \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $f \in \varepsilon(p)$ and following Lemma 3.3 locally write

$$
f(x)=f(p)+\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(\hat{x}_{k}(x)-p_{k}\right) \cdot \psi_{k}(x),
$$

where $\psi_{k} \in \varepsilon(p)$ with

$$
\psi_{k}(p)=\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{k}}(p) .
$$

We can now apply the differential operator $\alpha \in T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and yield

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha(f) & =\alpha\left(f(p)+\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(\hat{x}_{k}-p_{k}\right) \cdot \psi_{k}\right) \\
& =\alpha(f(p))+\sum_{k=1}^{m} \alpha\left(\hat{x}_{k}-p_{k}\right) \cdot \psi_{k}(p)+\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(\hat{x}_{k}(p)-p_{k}\right) \cdot \alpha\left(\psi_{k}\right) \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{m} v_{k} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{k}}(p) \\
& =\left\langle v, \operatorname{grad} f_{p}\right\rangle \\
& =\partial_{v} f
\end{aligned}
$$

where $v=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$. This means that $\Phi(v)=\partial_{v}=\alpha$ so the linear map $\Phi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is surjective and hence a vector space isomorphism.

Lemma 3.3. Let $p$ be a point in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a differentiable function defined on an open ball around $p$. Then for each $k=1,2, \ldots, m$ there exist functions $\psi_{k}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that for all $x \in U$

$$
f(x)=f(p)+\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(x_{k}-p_{k}\right) \cdot \psi_{k}(x) \text { and } \psi_{k}(p)=\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{k}}(p) .
$$

Proof. It follows from the fundamental theorem of calculus that

$$
\begin{aligned}
f(x)-f(p) & =\int_{0}^{1} \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(f(p+t(x-p))) d t \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(x_{k}-p_{k}\right) \cdot \int_{0}^{1} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{k}}(p+t(x-p)) d t
\end{aligned}
$$

The statement then immediately follows by setting

$$
\psi_{k}(x)=\int_{0}^{1} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{k}}(p+t(x-p)) d t
$$

Remark 3.4. Let $p$ be a point in $\mathbb{R}^{m}, v \in T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ be a tangent vector at $p$ and $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a $C^{1}$-function defined on an open subset $U$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ containing $p$. Let $\gamma: I \rightarrow U$ be a curve such that $\gamma(0)=p$
and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$. The identification given by Theorem 3.2 tells us that $v$ acts on $f$ by

$$
v(f)=\partial_{v}(f)=\left\langle v, \operatorname{grad} f_{p}\right\rangle=d f_{p}(\dot{\gamma}(0))=\left.\frac{d}{d t}(f \circ \gamma(t))\right|_{t=0} .
$$

This implies that the real number $v(f)$ is independent of the choice of the curve $\gamma$ as long as $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$.

As a direct consequence of Theorem 3.2 we have the following useful result.

Corollary 3.5. Let $p$ be a point in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $\left\{e_{k} \mid k=1, \ldots, m\right\}$ be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. Then the set $\left\{\partial_{e_{k}} \mid k=1, \ldots, m\right\}$ is a basis for the tangent space $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ at $p$.

We shall now employ the ideas presented above to generalise to the manifold setting. Let $M$ be a differentiable manifold and for a point $p \in M$ let $\varepsilon(p)$ denote the set of differentiable real-valued functions defined on an open neighborhood of $p$.

Definition 3.6. Let $M$ be a differentiable manifold and $p$ be a point on $M$. A tangent vector $X_{p}$ at $p$ is a map $X_{p}: \varepsilon(p) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that
(i) $X_{p}(\lambda \cdot f+\mu \cdot g)=\lambda \cdot X_{p}(f)+\mu \cdot X_{p}(g)$,
(ii) $X_{p}(f \cdot g)=X_{p}(f) \cdot g(p)+f(p) \cdot X_{p}(g)$
for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f, g \in \varepsilon(p)$. The set of tangent vectors at $p$ is called the tangent space at $p$ and denoted by $T_{p} M$.

The tangent space $T_{p} M$ of $M$ at $p$ has the structure of a real vector space. The addition + and the multiplication • by real numbers are simply given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(X_{p}+Y_{p}\right)(f) & =X_{p}(f)+Y_{p}(f) \\
\left(\lambda \cdot X_{p}\right)(f) & =\lambda \cdot X_{p}(f),
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $X_{p}, Y_{p} \in T_{p} M, f \in \varepsilon(p)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$.
We have not yet defined the differential of a map between manifolds (see Definition 3.14) but still think that the following remark is appropriate at this point.

Remark 3.7. Let $M$ be an $m$-dimensional manifold and $(U, x)$ be a chart around $p \in M$. Then the differential $d x_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{x(p)} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a bijective linear map such that for a given element $X_{p} \in T_{p} M$ there exists a tangent vector $v$ in $T_{x(p)} \mathbb{R}^{m} \cong \mathbb{R}^{m}$ such that $d x_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)=v$. The image $x(U)$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ containing $x(p)$ so we can find a curve $c: I \rightarrow x(U)$ with $c(0)=x(p)$ and $\dot{c}(0)=v$. Then the
composition $\gamma=x^{-1} \circ c: I \rightarrow U$ is a curve in $M$ through $p$ since $\gamma(0)=p$. The element $d\left(x^{-1}\right)_{x(p)}(v)$ of the tangent space $T_{p} M$ denoted by $\dot{\gamma}(0)$ is called the tangent to the curve $\gamma$ at $p$. It follows from the relation

$$
\dot{\gamma}(0)=d\left(x^{-1}\right)_{x(p)}(v)=X_{p}
$$

that the tangent space $T_{p} M$ can be thought of as the set of all tangents to curves through the point $p$.

If $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a $C^{1}$-function defined locally on $U$ then it follows from Definition 3.14 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
X_{p}(f) & =\left(d x_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)\right)\left(f \circ x^{-1}\right) \\
& =\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(f \circ x^{-1} \circ c(t)\right)\right|_{t=0} \\
& =\left.\frac{d}{d t}(f \circ \gamma(t))\right|_{t=0}
\end{aligned}
$$

It should be noted that the real number $X_{p}(f)$ is independent of the choice of the chart ( $U, x$ ) around $p$ and the curve $c: I \rightarrow x(U)$ as long as $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=X_{p}$.

We shall now determine the tangent spaces of some of the explicit differentiable manifolds introduced in Chapter 2.

Example 3.8. Let $\gamma: I \rightarrow S^{m}$ be a curve into the $m$-dimensional unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=X$. The curve satisfies

$$
\langle\gamma(t), \gamma(t)\rangle=1
$$

and differentiation yields

$$
\langle\dot{\gamma}(t), \gamma(t)\rangle+\langle\gamma(t), \dot{\gamma}(t)\rangle=0 .
$$

This means that $\langle p, X\rangle=0$ so every tangent vector $X \in T_{p} S^{m}$ must be orthogonal to $p$. On the other hand if $X \neq 0$ satisfies $\langle p, X\rangle=0$ then $\gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{m}$ with

$$
\gamma: t \mapsto \cos (t|X|) \cdot p+\sin (t|X|) \cdot X /|X|
$$

is a curve into $S^{m}$ with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=X$. This shows that the tangent space $T_{p} S^{m}$ is actually given by

$$
T_{p} S^{m}=\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \mid\langle p, X\rangle=0\right\} .
$$

Proposition 3.9. Let Exp : $\mathbb{C}^{m \times m} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ be the well known exponential map for complex matrices given by the converging power series

$$
\operatorname{Exp}: Z \mapsto \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{Z^{k}}{k!}
$$

For two elements $Z, W \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ we have the following
(i) $\operatorname{det}(\operatorname{Exp}(Z))=\exp (\operatorname{trace} Z)$,
(ii) $\operatorname{Exp}\left(Z^{t}\right)=\operatorname{Exp}(Z)^{t}$,
(iii) $\operatorname{Exp}(\bar{Z})=\overline{\operatorname{Exp}(Z)}$,
(iv) if $Z W=W Z$ then $\operatorname{Exp}(Z+W)=\operatorname{Exp}(Z) \operatorname{Exp}(W)$.

Proof. See Exercise 3.2
The real general linear group $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ so its tangent space $T_{p} \mathbf{G} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ at any point $p$ is simply $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$. The tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ of the special linear group $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ at the neutral element $e$ can be determined as follows.

Example 3.10. If $X$ is a matrix in $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ with trace $X=0$ then define a curve $A: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ by

$$
A: s \mapsto \operatorname{Exp}(s X)
$$

Then $A(0)=e, \dot{A}(0)=X$ and

$$
\operatorname{det}(A(s))=\operatorname{det}(\operatorname{Exp}(s X))=\exp (\operatorname{trace}(s X))=\exp (0)=1
$$

This shows that $A$ is a curve into the special linear group $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ and that $X$ is an element of the tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{S L} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ of $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ at the neutral element $e$. Hence the linear space

$$
\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{trace} X=0\right\}
$$

of dimension $m^{2}-1$ is contained in the tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$.
The curve given by $s \mapsto \operatorname{Exp}(s e)=\exp (s) e$ is not contained in $\mathrm{SL}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ so the dimension of $T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ is at most $m^{2}-1$. This shows that

$$
T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})=\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{trace} X=0\right\} .
$$

Example 3.11. Let $\gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbf{O}(m)$ be a curve into the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ such that $\gamma(0)=e$. Then $\gamma(s)^{t} \gamma(s)=e$ for all $s \in I$ and differentiation gives

$$
\left.\left(\dot{\gamma}(s)^{t} \gamma(s)+\gamma(s)^{t} \dot{\gamma}(s)\right)\right|_{s=0}=0
$$

or equivalently $\dot{\gamma}(0)^{t}+\dot{\gamma}(0)=0$. This means that each tangent vector of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ at $e$ is a skew-symmetric matrix.

On the other hand, for an arbitrary real skew-symmetric matrix $X$ define the curve $A: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ by $A: s \mapsto \operatorname{Exp}(s X)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
A(s)^{t} A(s) & =\operatorname{Exp}(s X)^{t} \operatorname{Exp}(s X) \\
& =\operatorname{Exp}\left(s X^{t}\right) \operatorname{Exp}(s X) \\
& =\operatorname{Exp}\left(s\left(X^{t}+X\right)\right) \\
& =\operatorname{Exp}(0)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=e
$$

This shows that $A$ is a curve on the orthogonal group, $A(0)=e$ and $\dot{A}(0)=X$ so $X$ is an element of $T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)$. Hence

$$
T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid X^{t}+X=0\right\} .
$$

The dimension of $T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)$ is therefore $m(m-1) / 2$. The orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is diffeomorphic to $\mathbf{S O}(m) \times\{ \pm 1\}$ so $\operatorname{dim}(\mathbf{S O}(m))=$ $\operatorname{dim}(\mathbf{O}(m))$ hence

$$
T_{e} \mathbf{S O}(m)=T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid X^{t}+X=0\right\} .
$$

We have proven the following result.
Proposition 3.12. Let $e$ be the neutral element of the classical real Lie groups $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R}), \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R}), \mathbf{O}(m), \mathbf{S O}(m)$. Then their tangent spaces at e are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
T_{e} \mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R}) & =\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}, \\
T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R}) & =\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid \text { trace } X=0\right\}, \\
T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m) & =\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid X^{t}+X=0\right\}, \\
T_{e} \mathbf{S O}(m) & =T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m) \cap T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})=T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)
\end{aligned}
$$

For the classical complex Lie groups similar methods can be used to prove the following.

Proposition 3.13. Let $e$ be the neutral element of the classical complex Lie groups $\mathbf{G} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{C}), \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C}), \mathbf{U}(m)$, and $\mathbf{S U}(m)$. Then their tangent spaces at e are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& T_{e} \mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})=\mathbb{C}^{m \times m}, \\
& T_{e} \mathbf{S L} \\
& \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{C})=\left\{Z \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m} \mid \operatorname{trace} Z=0\right\}, \\
& T_{e} \mathbf{U}(m)=\left\{Z \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m} \mid \bar{Z}^{t}+Z=0\right\}, \\
& T_{e} \mathbf{S U}(m)=T_{e} \mathbf{U}(m) \cap T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C}) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. See Exercise 3.4
Definition 3.14. Let $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ be a differentiable map between diffentiable manifolds. Then the differential $d \phi_{p}$ of $\phi$ at a point $p$ in $M$ is the map $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} N$ such that for all $X_{p} \in T_{p} M$ and $f \in \varepsilon(\phi(p))$ we have

$$
\left(d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)\right)(f)=X_{p}(f \circ \phi) .
$$

Remark 3.15. Let $M$ and $N$ be differentiable manifolds, $p \in M$ and $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ be a differentiable map. Further let $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a curve on $M$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=X_{p}$. Let $c: I \rightarrow N$ be the curve $c=\phi \circ \gamma$ in $N$ with $c(0)=\phi(p)$ and put $Y_{\phi(p)}=\dot{c}(0)$. Then it is an immediate consequence of Definition 3.14 that for each function $f \in \varepsilon(\phi(p))$ defined locally around $\phi(p)$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)\right)(f) & =X_{p}(f \circ \phi) \\
& =\left.\frac{d}{d t}(f \circ \phi \circ \gamma(t))\right|_{t=0} \\
& =\left.\frac{d}{d t}(f \circ c(t))\right|_{t=0} \\
& =Y_{\phi(p)}(f) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)=Y_{\phi(p)}$ or equivalently $d \phi_{p}(\dot{\gamma}(0))=\dot{c}(0)$. This result should be compared with Remark 2.11.

Proposition 3.16. Let $\phi: M_{1} \rightarrow M_{2}$ and $\psi: M_{2} \rightarrow M_{3}$ be differentiable maps between differentiable manifolds. Then for each point $p \in M_{1}$ we have
(i) the map d $\phi_{p}: T_{p} M_{1} \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} M_{2}$ is linear,
(ii) if $i d_{M_{1}}: M_{1} \rightarrow M_{1}$ is the identity map, then $d\left(i d_{M_{1}}\right)_{p}=i d_{T_{p} M_{1}}$,
(iii) $d(\psi \circ \phi)_{p}=d \psi_{\phi(p)} \circ d \phi_{p}$.

Proof. The statement (i) follows immediately from the fact that for $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $X_{p}, Y_{p} \in T_{p} M$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
d \phi_{p}\left(\lambda \cdot X_{p}+\mu \cdot Y_{p}\right)(f) & =\left(\lambda \cdot X_{p}+\mu \cdot Y_{p}\right)(f \circ \phi) \\
& =\lambda \cdot X_{p}(f \circ \phi)+\mu \cdot Y_{p}(f \circ \phi) \\
& =\lambda \cdot d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)(f)+\mu \cdot d \phi_{p}\left(Y_{p}\right)(f) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The statement (ii) is obvious. The statement (iii) is called the chain rule. If $X_{p} \in T_{p} M_{1}$ and $f \in \varepsilon(\psi \circ \phi(p))$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(d \psi_{\phi(p)} \circ d \phi_{p}\right)\left(X_{p}\right)(f) & =\left(d \psi_{\phi(p)}\left(d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)\right)\right)(f) \\
& =\left(d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)\right)(f \circ \psi) \\
& =X_{p}(f \circ \psi \circ \phi) \\
& =\left(d(\psi \circ \phi)_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)\right)(f) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Corollary 3.17. Let $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ be a diffeomorphism with the inverse $\psi=\phi^{-1}: N \rightarrow M$. Then the differential $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} N$ at $p$ is bijective and $\left(d \phi_{p}\right)^{-1}=d \psi_{\phi(p)}$.

Proof. The statement is a direct consequence of the following relations

$$
\begin{gathered}
d \psi_{\phi(p)} \circ d \phi_{p}=d(\psi \circ \phi)_{p}=d\left(\mathrm{id}_{M}\right)_{p}=\mathrm{id}_{T_{p} M}, \\
d \phi_{p} \circ d \psi_{\phi(p)}=d(\phi \circ \psi)_{\phi(p)}=d\left(\mathrm{id}_{N}\right)_{\phi(p)}=\operatorname{id}_{T_{\phi(p)} N} .
\end{gathered}
$$

We are now ready to prove the following interesting result. This is of course a direct generalisation of the corresponding result in the classical theory for surfaces in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$.

Theorem 3.18. Let $M^{m}$ be an m-dimensional differentable manifold and $p$ be a point in $M$. Then the tangent space $T_{p} M$ at $p$ is an $m$-dimensional real vector space.

Proof. Let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$. Then the linear map $d x_{p}$ : $T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{x(p)} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a vector space isomorphism. The statement now follows from Theorem 3.2 and Corollary 3.17.

Proposition 3.19. Let $M^{m}$ be a differentiable manifold, $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$ and $\left\{e_{k} \mid k=1, \ldots, m\right\}$ be the canonical basis for $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. For an arbitrary point $p$ in $U$ we define $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p}$ in $T_{p} M$ by

$$
\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p}: f \mapsto \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{k}}(p)=\partial_{e_{k}}\left(f \circ x^{-1}\right)(x(p)) .
$$

Then the set

$$
\left\{\left.\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p} \right\rvert\, k=1,2, \ldots, m\right\}
$$

is a basis for the tangent space $T_{p} M$ of $M$ at $p$.
Proof. The chart $x: U \rightarrow x(U)$ is a diffeomorphism and the differential $\left(d x^{-1}\right)_{x(p)}: T_{x(p)} \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} M$ of the inverse $x^{-1}: x(U) \rightarrow U$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(d x^{-1}\right)_{x(p)}\left(\partial_{e_{k}}\right)(f) & =\partial_{e_{k}}\left(f \circ x^{-1}\right)(x(p)) \\
& =\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p}(f)
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $f \in \varepsilon(p)$. The statement is then a direct consequence of Corollary 3.5.

The rest of this chapter is devoted to the introduction of special types of differentiable maps: immersions, embeddings and submersions.

Definition 3.20. For positive integers $m, n$ with $m \leq n$, a differentiable map $\phi: M^{m} \rightarrow N^{n}$ between manifolds is said to be an immersion if for each $p \in M$ the differential $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} N$
is injective. An embedding is an immersion $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ which is a homeomorphism onto its image $\phi(M)$.

Example 3.21. For positive integers $m, n$ with $m<n$ we have the inclusion map $\phi: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ given by

$$
\phi:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m+1}\right) \mapsto\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m+1}, 0, \ldots, 0\right) .
$$

The differential $d \phi_{x}$ at $x$ is injective since $d \phi_{x}(v)=(v, 0)$. The map $\phi$ is obviously a homeomorphism onto its image $\phi\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ hence an embedding. It is easily seen that even the restriction $\left.\phi\right|_{S^{m}}: S^{m} \rightarrow S^{n}$ of $\phi$ to the $m$-dimensional unit sphere $S^{m}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ is an embedding.

Definition 3.22. Let $M$ be an $m$-dimensional differentiable manifold and $U$ be an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. An immersion $\phi: U \rightarrow M$ is called a local parametrisation of $M$. If the immersion $\phi$ is surjective it is said to be a global parametrisation.

If $M$ is a differentiable manifold and $(U, x)$ is a chart on $M$, then the inverse $x^{-1}: x(U) \rightarrow U$ of $x$ is a global parametrisation of the open subset $U$ of $M$.

Example 3.23. Let $S^{1}$ be the unit circle in the complex plane $\mathbb{C}$. For a non-zero integer $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ define $\phi_{k}: S^{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $\phi_{k}: z \mapsto z^{k}$. For a point $w \in S^{1}$ let $\gamma_{w}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{1}$ be the curve with $\gamma_{w}: t \mapsto w e^{i t}$. Then $\gamma_{w}(0)=w$ and $\dot{\gamma}_{w}(0)=i w$. For the differential of $\phi_{k}$ we have

$$
\left(d \phi_{k}\right)_{w}\left(\dot{\gamma}_{w}(0)\right)=\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(\phi_{k} \circ \gamma_{w}(t)\right)\right|_{t=0}=\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(w^{k} e^{i k t}\right)\right|_{t=0}=k i w^{k} \neq 0
$$

This shows that the differential $\left(d \phi_{k}\right)_{w}: T_{w} S^{1} \cong \mathbb{R} \rightarrow T_{w^{k}} \mathbb{C} \cong \mathbb{R}^{2}$ is injective, so the map $\phi_{k}$ is an immersion. It is easily seen that $\phi_{k}$ is an embedding if and only if $k= \pm 1$.

Example 3.24. Let $q \in S^{3}$ be a quaternion of unit length and $\phi_{q}: S^{1} \rightarrow S^{3}$ be the map defined by $\phi_{q}: z \mapsto q z$. For $w \in S^{1}$ let $\gamma_{w}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{1}$ be the curve given by $\gamma_{w}(t)=w e^{i t}$. Then $\gamma_{w}(0)=w$, $\dot{\gamma}_{w}(0)=i w$ and $\phi_{q}\left(\gamma_{w}(t)\right)=q w e^{i t}$. By differentiating we yield

$$
d \phi_{q}\left(\dot{\gamma}_{w}(0)\right)=\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(\phi_{q}\left(\gamma_{w}(t)\right)\right)\right|_{t=0}=\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(q w e^{i t}\right)\right|_{t=0}=q i w .
$$

Then $\left|d \phi_{q}\left(\dot{\gamma}_{w}(0)\right)\right|=|q w i|=|q||w|=1 \neq 0$ implies that the differential $d \phi_{q}$ is injective. It is easily checked that the immersion $\phi_{q}$ is an embedding.

In the next example we construct an interesting embedding of the real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ into the vector space $\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ of the real symmetric $(m+1) \times(m+1)$ matrices.

Example 3.25. Let $S^{m}$ be the $m$-dimensional unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$. For a point $p \in S^{m}$ let

$$
l_{p}=\left\{\lambda p \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{R}\right\}
$$

be the line through the origin generated by $p$ and $\rho_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ be the reflection about the line $l_{p}$. Then $\rho_{p}$ is an element of $\operatorname{End}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ i.e. the set of linear endomorphisms of $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ which can be identified with $\mathbb{R}^{(m+1) \times(m+1)}$. It is easily checked that the reflection about the line $l_{p}$ is given by

$$
\rho_{p}: q \mapsto 2\langle q, p\rangle p-q .
$$

It then follows from the equations

$$
\rho_{p}(q)=2\langle q, p\rangle p-q=2 p\langle p, q\rangle-q=\left(2 p p^{t}-e\right) q
$$

that the symmetric matrix in $\mathbb{R}^{(m+1) \times(m+1)}$ corresponding to $\rho_{p}$ is just

$$
\left(2 p p^{t}-e\right)
$$

We will now show that the map $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ given by

$$
\phi: p \mapsto \rho_{p}
$$

is an immersion. Let $p$ be an arbitrary point on $S^{m}$ and $\alpha, \beta: I \rightarrow S^{m}$ be two curves meeting at $p$, that is $\alpha(0)=p=\beta(0)$, with $X=\dot{\alpha}(0)$ and $Y=\dot{\beta}(0)$. For $\gamma \in\{\alpha, \beta\}$ we have

$$
\phi \circ \gamma: t \mapsto(q \mapsto 2\langle q, \gamma(t)\rangle \gamma(t)-q)
$$

so

$$
\begin{aligned}
(d \phi)_{p}(\dot{\gamma}(0)) & =\left.\frac{d}{d t}(\phi \circ \gamma(t))\right|_{t=0} \\
& =(q \mapsto 2\langle q, \dot{\gamma}(0)\rangle \gamma(0)+2\langle q, \gamma(0)\rangle \dot{\gamma}(0))
\end{aligned}
$$

This means that

$$
d \phi_{p}(X)=(q \mapsto 2\langle q, X\rangle p+2\langle q, p\rangle X)
$$

and

$$
d \phi_{p}(Y)=(q \mapsto 2\langle q, Y\rangle p+2\langle q, p\rangle Y) .
$$

If $X \neq Y$ then $d \phi_{p}(X) \neq d \phi_{p}(Y)$ so the differential $d \phi_{p}$ is injective, hence the map $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ is an immersion.

If two points $p, q \in S^{m}$ are linearly independent, then the lines $l_{p}$ and $l_{q}$ are different. But these are just the eigenspaces of $\rho_{p}$ and $\rho_{q}$ with the eigenvalue +1 , respectively. This shows that the linear endomorphisms $\rho_{p}, \rho_{q}$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ are different in this case.

On the other hand, if $p$ and $q$ are parallel then $p= \pm q$ hence $\rho_{p}=\rho_{q}$. This means that the image $\phi\left(S^{m}\right)$ can be identified with the quotient space $S^{m} / \equiv$ where $\equiv$ is the equivalence relation defined by

$$
x \equiv y \text { if and only if } x= \pm y
$$

This is of course the real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ so the map $\phi$ induces an embedding $\Phi: \mathbb{R} P^{m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ with

$$
\Phi:[p] \rightarrow \rho_{p}
$$

For each $p \in S^{m}$ the reflection $\rho_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ about the line $l_{p}$ satisfies

$$
\rho_{p}^{t} \cdot \rho_{p}=e
$$

This shows that the image $\Phi\left(\mathbb{R} P^{m}\right)=\phi\left(S^{m}\right)$ is not only contained in the linear space $\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ but also in the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m+1)$ which we know is a submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{(m+1) \times(m+1)}$

The following result was proven by Hassler Whitney in his famous paper, Differentiable Manifolds, Ann. of Math. 37 (1936), 645-680.

Deep Result 3.26. For $1 \leq r \leq \infty$ let $M$ be an $m$-dimensional $C^{r}$-manifold. Then there exists a $C^{r}$-embedding $\phi: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 m+1}$ of $M$ into the $(2 m+1)$-dimensional real vector space $\mathbb{R}^{2 m+1}$.

The classical inverse function theorem generalises to the manifold setting as follows. The reader should compare this with Fact 2.12.

Theorem 3.27 (The Inverse Function Theorem). Let $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ be a differentiable map between manifolds with $\operatorname{dim} M=\operatorname{dim} N$. If $p$ is a point in $M$ such that the differential $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} N$ at $p$ is bijective then there exist open neighborhoods $U_{p}$ around $p$ and $U_{q}$ around $q=\phi(p)$ such that $\psi=\left.\phi\right|_{U_{p}}: U_{p} \rightarrow U_{q}$ is bijective and the inverse $\psi^{-1}: U_{q} \rightarrow U_{p}$ is differentiable.

Proof. See Exercise 3.8
We shall now generalise the classical implicit function theorem to manifolds. For this we need the following definition. Compare this with Definition 2.13.

Definition 3.28. Let $m, n$ be positive integers and $\phi: M^{m} \rightarrow N^{n}$ be a differentiable map between manifolds. A point $p \in M$ is said to be regular for $\phi$ if the differential

$$
d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} N
$$

is of full rank, but critical otherwise. A point $q \in \phi(M)$ is said to be a regular value of $\phi$ if every point in the pre-image $\phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ of $\{q\}$ is regular.

The reader should compare the following result with Theorem 2.15.
Theorem 3.29 (The Implicit Function Theorem). Let $\phi: M^{m} \rightarrow$ $N^{n}$ be a differentiable map between manifolds such that $m>n$. If $q \in \phi(M)$ is a regular value, then the pre-image $\phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ of $q$ is a submanifold of $M^{m}$ of dimension an $(m-n)$. The tangent space $T_{p} \phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ of $\phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ at $p$ is the kernel of the differential $d \phi_{p}$ i.e.

$$
T_{p} \phi^{-1}(\{q\})=\left\{X \in T_{p} M \mid d \phi_{p}(X)=0\right\} .
$$

Proof. Let $(V, y)$ be a chart on $N$ with $q \in V$ and $y(q)=0$. For a point $p \in \phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ we choose a chart $(U, x)$ on $M$ such that $p \in U$, $x(p)=0$ and $\phi(U) \subset V$. Then the differential of the map

$$
\psi=\left.y \circ \phi \circ x^{-1}\right|_{x(U)}: x(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

at the point 0 is given by

$$
d \psi_{0}=(d y)_{q} \circ d \phi_{p} \circ\left(d x^{-1}\right)_{0}: T_{0} \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{0} \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

The pairs $(U, x)$ and $(V, y)$ are charts so the differentials $(d y)_{q}$ and $\left(d x^{-1}\right)_{0}$ are bijective. This means that $d \psi_{0}$ is surjective since $d \phi_{p}$ is. It then follows from Theorem 2.15 that $x\left(\phi^{-1}(\{q\}) \cap U\right)$ is an $(m-n)$ dimensional submanifold of $x(U)$. Hence $\phi^{-1}(\{q\}) \cap U$ is an $(m-n)$ dimensional submanifold of $U$. This is true for each point $p \in \phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ so we have proven that $\phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ is a submanifold of $M^{m}$ of dimension $(m-n)$.

Let $\gamma: I \rightarrow \phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ be a curve such that $\gamma(0)=p$. Then

$$
(d \phi)_{p}(\dot{\gamma}(0))=\left.\frac{d}{d t}(\phi \circ \gamma(t))\right|_{t=0}=\left.\frac{d q}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=0
$$

This implies that $T_{p} \phi^{-1}(\{q\})$ is contained in and has the same dimension as the kernel of $d \phi_{p}$, so $T_{p} \phi^{-1}(\{q\})=\operatorname{Ker} d \phi_{p}$.

We complete this chapter with a discussion on the important submersions between differentiable manifolds.

Definition 3.30. For positive integers $m, n$ with $m \geq n$ a differentiable map $\phi: M^{m} \rightarrow N^{n}$ between two manifolds is said to be a submersion if for each $p \in M$ the differential $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} N$ is surjective.

The reader should compare Definition 3.30 with Definition 3.20.
Example 3.31. If $m, n$ are positive integers such that $m \geq n$ then we have the projection map $\pi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ given by $\pi:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \mapsto$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$. Its differential $d \pi_{x}$ at a point $x$ is surjective since

$$
d \pi_{x}\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m}\right)=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right)
$$

This means that the projection is a submersion.
The following important example provides us with a submersion between spheres.

Example 3.32. Let $S^{3}$ and $S^{2}$ be the unit spheres in $\mathbb{C}^{2}$ and $\mathbb{C} \times$ $\mathbb{R} \cong \mathbb{R}^{3}$, respectively. The Hopf map $\phi: S^{3} \rightarrow S^{2}$ is given by

$$
\phi:(z, w) \mapsto\left(2 z \bar{w},|z|^{2}-|w|^{2}\right)
$$

For $p=(z, w) \in S^{3}$ the Hopf circle $C_{p}$ through $p$ is given by

$$
C_{p}=\left\{e^{i \theta}(z, w) \mid \theta \in \mathbb{R}\right\}
$$

The following shows that the Hopf map is constant along each Hopf circle

$$
\begin{aligned}
\phi\left(e^{i \theta}(z, w)\right) & =\left(2 e^{i \theta} z e^{-i \theta} \bar{w},\left|e^{i \theta} z\right|^{2}-\left|e^{i \theta} w\right|^{2}\right) \\
& =\left(2 z \bar{w},|z|^{2}-|w|^{2}\right) \\
& =\phi((z, w))
\end{aligned}
$$

The map $\phi$ and its differential $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} S^{3} \rightarrow T_{\phi(p)} S^{2}$ are surjective for each $p \in S^{3}$. This implies that each point $q \in S^{2}$ is a regular value and the fibres of $\phi$ are 1-dimensional submanifolds of $S^{3}$. They are actually the great circles given by

$$
\phi^{-1}\left(\left\{\left(2 z \bar{w},|z|^{2}-|w|^{2}\right)\right\}\right)=\left\{e^{i \theta}(z, w) \mid \theta \in \mathbb{R}\right\} .
$$

This means that the 3 -dimensional sphere $S^{3}$ is a disjoint union of great circles

$$
S^{3}=\bigcup_{q \in S^{2}} \phi^{-1}(\{q\})
$$

## Exercises

Exercise 3.1. Let $p$ be an arbitrary point of the unit sphere $S^{2 n+1}$ in $\mathbb{C}^{n+1} \cong \mathbb{R}^{2 n+2}$. Determine the tangent space $T_{p} S^{2 n+1}$ and show that this contains an $n$-dimensional complex vector subspace of $\mathbb{C}^{n+1}$.

Exercise 3.2. Use your local library to find a proof of Proposition 3.9 .

Exercise 3.3. Prove that the matrices

$$
X_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & -1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad X_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right), \quad X_{3}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

form a basis for the tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ of the real special linear group $\mathbf{S L}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ at the neutral element $e$. For each $k=1,2,3$ find an explicit formula for the curve $\gamma_{k}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{S L}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ given by

$$
\gamma_{k}: s \mapsto \operatorname{Exp}\left(s X_{k}\right)
$$

Exercise 3.4. Find a proof of Proposition 3.13.
Exercise 3.5. Prove that the matrices

$$
Z_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & -1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad Z_{2}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
i & 0 \\
0 & -i
\end{array}\right), \quad Z_{3}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & i \\
i & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

form a basis for the tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{S U}(2)$ of the special unitary group $\mathbf{S U}(2)$ at the neutral element $e$. For each $k=1,2,3$ find an explicit formula for the curve $\gamma_{k}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{S U ( 2 )}$ given by

$$
\gamma_{k}: s \mapsto \operatorname{Exp}\left(s Z_{k}\right)
$$

Exercise 3.6. For each non-negative integer $k$ define $\phi_{k}: \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ and $\psi_{k}: \mathbb{C}^{*} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ by $\phi_{k}, \psi_{k}: z \mapsto z^{k}$. For which such $k$ are $\phi_{k}, \psi_{k}$ immersions, embeddings or submersions ?

Exercise 3.7. Prove that the differentiable map $\phi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{m}$ given by

$$
\phi:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \mapsto\left(e^{i x_{1}}, \ldots, e^{i x_{m}}\right)
$$

is a parametrisation of the $m$-dimensional torus $T^{m}$ in $\mathbb{C}^{m}$.
Exercise 3.8. Find a proof of Theorem 3.27.
Exercise 3.9. Prove that the Hopf-map $\phi: S^{3} \rightarrow S^{2}$ with $\phi$ : $(x, y) \mapsto\left(2 x \bar{y},|x|^{2}-|y|^{2}\right)$ is a submersion.

## CHAPTER 4

## The Tangent Bundle

In this chapter we introduce the tangent bundle $T M$ of a differentiable manifold $M$. Intuitively, this is the object that we get by glueing at each point $p$ on $M$ the corresponding tangent space $T_{p} M$. The differentiable structure on $M$ induces a natural differentiable structure on the tangent bundle $T M$ turning it into a differentiable manifold. To explain the important notion of the tangent bundle we investigate several examples. The classical Lie groups will here play a particular important role.

We have already seen that for a point $p \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ the tangent space $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ can be identified with the $m$-dimensional vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. This means that if we at each point $p \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ glue the tangent space $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ to $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ we obtain the so called tangent bundle of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$

$$
T \mathbb{R}^{m}=\left\{(p, v) \mid p \in \mathbb{R}^{m} \text { and } v \in T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}\right\} .
$$

For this we have the natural projection $\pi: T \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ defined by

$$
\pi:(p, v) \mapsto p
$$

and for each point $p \in M$ the fibre $\pi^{-1}(\{p\})$ over $p$ is precisely the tangent space $T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ at $p$.

Remark 4.1. Classically, a vector field $X$ on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a differentiable map $X: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ but we would like to view it as a map $X: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T \mathbb{R}^{m}$ into the tangent bundle and write

$$
X: p \mapsto\left(p, X_{p}\right) .
$$

Following Proposition 3.19 two vector fields $X, Y: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T \mathbb{R}^{m}$ can be written as

$$
X=\sum_{k=1}^{m} a_{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}} \text { and } Y=\sum_{k=1}^{m} b_{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}},
$$

where $a_{k}, b_{k}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are differentiable functions defined on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. If $f: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is another such function the commutator $[X, Y]$ acts on $f$ as follows.

$$
[X, Y](f)=X(Y(f))-Y(X(f))
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\sum_{k, l=1}^{m}\left(a_{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\left(b_{l} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}\right)-b_{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\left(a_{l} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}\right)\right)(f) \\
& =\sum_{k, l=1}^{m}\left(a_{k} \frac{\partial b_{l}}{\partial x_{k}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}+a_{k} b_{l} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{k} \partial x_{l}}\right. \\
& \left.\quad-b_{k} \frac{\partial a_{l}}{\partial x_{k}} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}-b_{k} a_{l} \frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x_{k} \partial x_{l}}\right)(f) \\
& =\sum_{l=1}^{m}\left\{\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(a_{k} \frac{\partial b_{l}}{\partial x_{k}}-b_{k} \frac{\partial a_{l}}{\partial x_{k}}\right)\right\} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}(f) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that the commutator $[X, Y]$ is a differentiable vector field on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$.

We shall now generalise to the manifold setting. First we introduce the following notion of a topological vector bundle.

Definition 4.2. Let $E$ and $M$ be topological manifolds and $\pi$ : $E \rightarrow M$ be a continuous surjective map. The triple $(E, M, \pi)$ is called an $n$-dimensional topological vector bundle over $M$ if
(i) for each $p \in M$ the fibre $E_{p}=\pi^{-1}(\{p\})$ is an $n$-dimensional vector space,
(ii) for each point $p \in M$ there exists a bundle chart $\left(\pi^{-1}(U), \psi\right)$ consisting of the pre-image $\pi^{-1}(U)$ of an open neighbourhood $U$ of $p$ and a homeomorphism $\psi: \pi^{-1}(U) \rightarrow U \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$ such that for all $q \in U$ the map $\psi_{q}=\left.\psi\right|_{E_{q}}: E_{q} \rightarrow\{q\} \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a vector space isomorphism.
A bundle atlas for $(E, M, \pi)$ is a collection

$$
\mathcal{B}=\left\{\left(\pi^{-1}\left(U_{\alpha}\right), \psi_{\alpha}\right) \mid \alpha \in \mathcal{I}\right\}
$$

of bundle charts such that $M=\cup_{\alpha} U_{\alpha}$ and for all $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{I}$ there exists a $\operatorname{map} A_{\alpha, \beta}: U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta} \rightarrow \mathbf{G} \mathbf{L}_{n}(\mathbb{R})$ such that the corresponding continuous map

$$
\left.\psi_{\beta} \circ \psi_{\alpha}^{-1}\right|_{\left(U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta}\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{n}}:\left(U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta}\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow\left(U_{\alpha} \cap U_{\beta}\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{n}
$$

is given by

$$
(p, v) \mapsto\left(p,\left(A_{\alpha, \beta}(p)\right)(v)\right) .
$$

The elements of $\left\{A_{\alpha, \beta} \mid \alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{I}\right\}$ are called the transition maps of the bundle atlas $\mathcal{B}$.

Definition 4.3. Let $(E, M, \pi)$ be an $n$-dimensional topological vector bundle over $M$. A continuous map $\sigma: M \rightarrow E$ is called a section of the bundle $(E, M, \pi)$ if $\pi \circ \sigma(p)=p$ for each $p \in M$.

Definition 4.4. A topological vector bundle $(E, M, \pi)$ over $M$, of dimension $n$, is said to be trivial if there exists a global bundle chart $\psi: E \rightarrow M \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$.

Example 4.5. Let $M$ be the one dimensional circle $S^{1}, E$ be the two dimensional cylinder $E=S^{1} \times \mathbb{R}^{1}$ and $\pi: E \rightarrow M$ be the projection map given by $\pi:(z, t) \mapsto z$. Then $(E, M, \pi)$ is a trivial line bundle i.e. a trivial one dimensional vector bundle over the circle. This because the identity map $\psi: S^{1} \times \mathbb{R}^{1} \rightarrow S^{1} \times \mathbb{R}^{1}$ with $\psi:(z, t) \rightarrow(z, t)$ is a global bundle chart.

Example 4.6. For a positive integer $n$ and a topological manifold $M$ we have the $n$-dimensional trivial vector bundle $\left(M \times \mathbb{R}^{n}, M, \pi\right)$ over $M$, where $\pi: M \times \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow M$ is the projection map with $\pi:(p, v) \mapsto$ $p$. The bundle is trivial since the identity map $\psi: M \times \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow M \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is a global bundle chart.

Example 4.7. Let $M$ be the circle $S^{1}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{4}$ parametrised by $\gamma$ : $\mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{4}$ with

$$
\gamma: s \mapsto(\cos s, \sin s, 0,0)
$$

Further let $E$ be the well known Möbius band in $\mathbb{R}^{4}$ parametrised by $\phi: \mathbb{R}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{4}$ with

$$
\phi:(s, t) \mapsto(\cos s, \sin s, 0,0)+t \cdot(0,0, \sin (s / 2), \cos (s / 2))
$$

Then $E$ is a regular surface and the natural projection $\pi: E \rightarrow M$ given by $\pi:(x, y, z, w) \mapsto(x, y)$ is continuous and surjective. The triple $(E, M, \pi)$ is a line bundle over the circle $S^{1}$. The Möbius band is not orientable and hence not homeomorphic to the product $S^{1} \times \mathbb{R}$. This shows that the bundle $(E, M, \pi)$ is not trivial.

Definition 4.8. Let $E$ and $M$ be differentiable manifolds and $\pi: E \rightarrow M$ be a differentiable map such that $(E, M, \pi)$ is an $n$ dimensional topological vector bundle. A bundle atlas $\mathcal{B}$ for $(E, M, \pi)$ is said to be differentiable if the corresponding transition maps are differentiable. A differentiable vector bundle is a topological vector bundle together with a maximal differentiable bundle atlas. By $C^{\infty}(E)$ we denote the set of all smooth sections of $(E, M, \pi)$.

From now on we shall assume, when not stating otherwise, that all our vector bundles are smooth.

Definition 4.9. Let $(E, M, \pi)$ be a vector bundle over a manifold $M$. Then we define the operations + and $\cdot$ on the set $C^{\infty}(E)$ of smooth sections of $(E, M, \pi)$ by
(i) $(v+w)_{p}=v_{p}+w_{p}$,
(ii) $(f \cdot v)_{p}=f(p) \cdot v_{p}$
for all $p \in M, v, w \in C^{\infty}(E)$ and $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$. If $U$ is an open subset of $M$ then a set $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ of smooth sections $v_{1}, \ldots, v_{n}: U \rightarrow E$ on $U$ is called a local frame for $E$ if for each $p \in U$ the set $\left\{\left(v_{1}\right)_{p}, \ldots,\left(v_{n}\right)_{p}\right\}$ is a basis for the vector space $E_{p}$.

Remark 4.10. According to Definition 2.19, the set of smooth realvalued functions on $M$ is denoted by $C^{\infty}(M)$. With the above defined operations on $C^{\infty}(E)$ it becomes a module over $C^{\infty}(M)$ and in particular a vector space over the real numbers as the constant functions in $C^{\infty}(M)$.

The following example is the central part of this chapter. Here we construct the tangent bundle of a differentiable manifold.

Example 4.11. Let $M^{m}$ be a differentiable manifold with maximal atlas $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$. Define the set $T M$ by

$$
T M=\left\{(p, v) \mid p \in M \text { and } v \in T_{p} M\right\}
$$

and let $\pi: T M \rightarrow M$ be the projection map satisfying

$$
\pi:(p, v) \mapsto p
$$

Then the fibre $\pi^{-1}(\{p\})$ is the $m$-dimensional tangent space $T_{p} M$. The triple $(T M, M, \pi)$ is called the tangent bundle of $M$. We shall now equip this with the structure of a differentiable vector bundle.

For every chart $x: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ from the maximal atlas $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ of $M$ we define the chart

$$
x^{*}: \pi^{-1}(U) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

on the tangent bundle $T M$ by the formula

$$
x^{*}:\left(p, \sum_{k=1}^{m} v_{k}(p)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p}\right) \mapsto\left(x(p),\left(v_{1}(p), \ldots, v_{m}(p)\right)\right) .
$$

Proposition 3.19 shows that the map $x^{*}$ is well defined. The collection

$$
\left\{\left(x^{*}\right)^{-1}(W) \subset T M \mid(U, x) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}} \text { and } W \subset x(U) \times \mathbb{R}^{m} \text { open }\right\}
$$

is a basis for a topology $\mathcal{T}_{T M}$ on $T M$ and $\left(\pi^{-1}(U), x^{*}\right)$ is a chart on the topological manifold ( $T M, \mathcal{T}_{T M}$ ) of dimension $2 m$.

If $(U, x)$ and $(V, y)$ are two charts in $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ such that $p \in U \cap V$ then the transition map

$$
\left(y^{*}\right) \circ\left(x^{*}\right)^{-1}: x^{*}\left(\pi^{-1}(U \cap V)\right) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

is given by

$$
(a, b) \mapsto\left(y \circ x^{-1}(a), \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\partial y_{1}}{\partial x_{k}}\left(x^{-1}(a)\right) b_{k}, \ldots, \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\partial y_{m}}{\partial x_{k}}\left(x^{-1}(a)\right) b_{k}\right)
$$

see Exercise 4.1. Since we are assuming that $y \circ x^{-1}$ is differentiable it follows that $\left(y^{*}\right) \circ\left(x^{*}\right)^{-1}$ is also differentiable. This means that

$$
\mathcal{A}^{*}=\left\{\left(\pi^{-1}(U), x^{*}\right) \mid(U, x) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}}\right\}
$$

is a $C^{r}$-atlas on $T M$ so $\left(T M, \widehat{\mathcal{A}^{*}}\right)$ is a differentiable manifold. The surjective projection map $\pi: T M \rightarrow M$ is clearly differentiable.

For each point $p \in M$ the fibre $\pi^{-1}(\{p\})$ is the tangent space $T_{p} M$ and hence an $m$-dimensional vector space. For a chart $x: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ in the maximal atlas $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ of $M$ we define $\bar{x}: \pi^{-1}(U) \rightarrow U \times \mathbb{R}^{m}$ by

$$
\bar{x}:\left(p, \sum_{k=1}^{m} v_{k}(p)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p}\right) \mapsto\left(p,\left(v_{1}(p), \ldots, v_{m}(p)\right)\right) .
$$

The restriction $\bar{x}_{p}=\left.\bar{x}\right|_{T_{p} M}: T_{p} M \rightarrow\{p\} \times \mathbb{R}^{m}$ to the tangent space $T_{p} M$ is given by

$$
\bar{x}_{p}: \sum_{k=1}^{m} v_{k}(p)\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{p} \mapsto\left(v_{1}(p), \ldots, v_{m}(p)\right)
$$

so it is clearly a vector space isomorphism. This implies that the map

$$
\bar{x}: \pi^{-1}(U) \rightarrow U \times \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

is a bundle chart. If $(U, x)$ and $(V, y)$ are two charts in $\hat{\mathcal{A}}$ such that $p \in U \cap V$ then the transition map

$$
(\bar{y}) \circ(\bar{x})^{-1}:(U \cap V) \times \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow(U \cap V) \times \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

is given by

$$
(p, b) \mapsto\left(p, \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\partial y_{1}}{\partial x_{k}}(p) \cdot b_{k}, \ldots, \sum_{k=1}^{m} \frac{\partial y_{m}}{\partial x_{k}}(p) \cdot b_{k}\right)
$$

It is clear that the matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial y_{1} / \partial x_{1}(p) & \ldots & \partial y_{1} / \partial x_{m}(p) \\
\vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\partial y_{m} / \partial x_{1}(p) & \ldots & \partial y_{m} / \partial x_{m}(p)
\end{array}\right)
$$

is of full rank so the corresponding linear map $A(p): \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a vector space isomorphism for all $p \in U \cap V$. This shows that

$$
\mathcal{B}=\left\{\left(\pi^{-1}(U), \bar{x}\right) \mid(U, x) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}}\right\}
$$

is a bundle atlas turning ( $T M, M, \pi$ ) into a topological vector bundle of dimension $m$. It immediately follows from above that ( $T M, M, \pi$ ) together with the maximal bundle atlas $\hat{\mathcal{B}}$ defined by $\mathcal{B}$ is a differentiable vector bundle.

Definition 4.12. Let $M$ be a differentiable manifold, then a section $X: M \rightarrow T M$ of the tangent bundle is called a vector field. The set of smooth vector fields $X: M \rightarrow T M$ is denoted by $C^{\infty}(T M)$.

Example 4.13. We have seen earlier that the 3-dimensional sphere $S^{3}$ in $\mathbb{H} \cong \mathbb{C}^{2} \cong \mathbb{R}^{4}$ carries a group structure . given by

$$
(z, w) \cdot(\alpha, \beta)=(z \alpha-w \bar{\beta}, z \beta+w \bar{\alpha}) .
$$

This turns $\left(S^{3}, \cdot\right)$ into a Lie group with neutral element $e=(1,0)$. Put $v_{1}=(i, 0), v_{2}=(0,1)$ and $v_{3}=(0, i)$ and for $k=1,2,3$ define the curves $\gamma_{k}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{3}$ with

$$
\gamma_{k}: t \mapsto \cos t \cdot(1,0)+\sin t \cdot v_{k}
$$

Then $\gamma_{k}(0)=e$ and $\dot{\gamma}_{k}(0)=v_{k}$ so $v_{1}, v_{2}, v_{3}$ are elements of the tangent space $T_{e} S^{3}$ of $S^{3}$ at the neutral element $e$. They are linearly independent and hence generate $T_{e} S^{3}$. The group structure on $S^{3}$ can be used to extend vectors in $T_{e} S^{3}$ to vector fields on $S^{3}$ as follows. For $p \in S^{3}$ let $L_{p}: S^{3} \rightarrow S^{3}$ be the left translation on $S^{3}$ by $p$ given by $L_{p}: q \mapsto p \cdot q$. Then define the vector fields $X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3} \in C^{\infty}\left(T S^{3}\right)$ by

$$
\left(X_{k}\right)_{p}=\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(v_{k}\right)=\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(L_{p}\left(\gamma_{k}(t)\right)\right)\right|_{t=0}
$$

It is left as an exercise for the reader to show that at an arbitrary point $p=(z, w) \in S^{3}$ the values of $X_{k}$ at $p$ are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(X_{1}\right)_{p}=(z, w) \cdot(i, 0)=(i z,-i w), \\
& \left(X_{2}\right)_{p}=(z, w) \cdot(0,1)=(-w, z) \\
& \left(X_{3}\right)_{p}=(z, w) \cdot(0, i)=(i w, i z) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Our next goal is to introduce the Lie bracket on the set of vector fields $C^{\infty}(T M)$ on $M$.

Definition 4.14. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold. For two vector fields $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ we define the Lie bracket $[X, Y]_{p}: C^{\infty}(M) \rightarrow$ $\mathbb{R}$ of $X$ and $Y$ at $p \in M$ by

$$
[X, Y]_{p}(f)=X_{p}(Y(f))-Y_{p}(X(f))
$$

Remark 4.15. The reader should note that if $M$ is a smooth manifold, $X \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$ then the derivative $X(f)$ is the smooth real-valued function on $M$ given by $X(f): q \mapsto X_{q}(f)$ for all $q \in M$.

The next result shows that the Lie bracket $[X, Y]_{p}$ actually is an element of the tangent space $T_{p} M$. The reader should compare this with Definition 3.6 and Remark 4.1.

Proposition 4.16. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold, $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ be vector fields on $M, f, g \in C^{\infty}(M)$ and $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$. Then
(i) $[X, Y]_{p}(\lambda \cdot f+\mu \cdot g)=\lambda \cdot[X, Y]_{p}(f)+\mu \cdot[X, Y]_{p}(g)$,
(ii) $[X, Y]_{p}(f \cdot g)=[X, Y]_{p}(f) \cdot g(p)+f(p) \cdot[X, Y]_{p}(g)$.

## Proof.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {[X, Y]_{p}(\lambda f+\mu g) } \\
= & X_{p}(Y(\lambda f+\mu g))-Y_{p}(X(\lambda f+\mu g)) \\
= & \lambda X_{p}(Y(f))+\mu X_{p}(Y(g))-\lambda Y_{p}(X(f))-\mu Y_{p}(X(g)) \\
= & \lambda[X, Y]_{p}(f)+\mu[X, Y]_{p}(g) . \\
& {[X, Y]_{p}(f \cdot g) } \\
= & X_{p}(Y(f \cdot g))-Y_{p}(X(f \cdot g)) \\
= & X_{p}(f \cdot Y(g)+g \cdot Y(f))-Y_{p}(f \cdot X(g)+g \cdot X(f)) \\
= & X_{p}(f) Y_{p}(g)+f(p) X_{p}(Y(g))+X_{p}(g) Y_{p}(f)+g(p) X_{p}(Y(f)) \\
& -Y_{p}(f) X_{p}(g)-f(p) Y_{p}(X(g))-Y_{p}(g) X_{p}(f)-g(p) Y_{p}(X(f)) \\
= & f(p)\left\{X_{p}(Y(g))-Y_{p}(X(g))\right\}+g(p)\left\{X_{p}(Y(f))-Y_{p}(X(f))\right\} \\
= & f(p)[X, Y]_{p}(g)+g(p)[X, Y]_{p}(f) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 4.16 implies that if $X, Y$ are smooth vector fields on $M$ then the map $[X, Y]: M \rightarrow T M$ given by $[X, Y]: p \mapsto[X, Y]_{p}$ is a section of the tangent bundle. In Proposition 4.18 we shall prove that this section is smooth. For this we need the following technical lemma.

Lemma 4.17. Let $M^{m}$ be a smooth manifold and $X: M \rightarrow T M$ be a section of TM. Then the following conditions are equivalent
(i) the section $X$ is smooth,
(ii) if $(U, x)$ is a chart on $M$ then the functions $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$
\left.X\right|_{U}=\sum_{k=1}^{m} a_{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}
$$

are smooth,
(iii) if $f: V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined on an open subset $V$ of $M$ is smooth, then the function $X(f): V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ with $X(f)(p)=X_{p}(f)$ is smooth.

Proof. This proof is divided into three parts. First we show that (i) implies (ii): The functions

$$
a_{k}=\left.\pi_{m+k} \circ x^{*} \circ X\right|_{U}: U \rightarrow \pi^{-1}(U) \rightarrow x(U) \times \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}
$$

are compositions of smooth maps so therefore smooth.
Secondly, we now show that (ii) gives (iii): Let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$ such that $U$ is contained in $V$. By assumption the map

$$
X\left(\left.f\right|_{U}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}
$$

is smooth. This is true for each such chart $(U, x)$ so the function $X(f)$ is smooth on $V$.

Finally we show that (iii) leads to (i): Note that the smoothness of the section $X$ is equivalent to $\left.x^{*} \circ X\right|_{U}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 m}$ being smooth for all charts $(U, x)$ on $M$. On the other hand, this is equivalent to

$$
x_{k}^{*}=\left.\pi_{k} \circ x^{*} \circ X\right|_{U}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}
$$

being smooth for all $k=1,2, \ldots, 2 m$ and all charts $(U, x)$ on $M$. It is trivial that the coordinate functions $x_{k}^{*}=x_{k}$ for $k=1, \ldots, m$ are smooth. But $x_{m+k}^{*}=a_{k}=X\left(x_{k}\right)$ for $k=1, \ldots, m$ hence also smooth by assumption.

Proposition 4.18. Let $M$ be a manifold and $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ be vector fields on $M$. Then the section $[X, Y]: M \rightarrow T M$ of the tangent bundle given by $[X, Y]: p \mapsto[X, Y]_{p}$ is smooth.

Proof. Let $f: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be an arbitrary smooth function on $M$ then $[X, Y](f)=X(Y(f))-Y(X(f))$ is smooth so it follows from Lemma 4.17 that the section $[X, Y]$ is smooth.

For later use we prove the following important result.
Lemma 4.19. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold and [,] be the Lie bracket on the tangent bundle TM. Then
(i) $[X, f \cdot Y]=X(f) \cdot Y+f \cdot[X, Y]$,
(ii) $[f \cdot X, Y]=f \cdot[X, Y]-Y(f) \cdot X$
for all $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$.
Proof. If $g \in C^{\infty}(M)$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[X, f \cdot Y](g) } & =X(f \cdot Y(g))-f \cdot Y(X(g)) \\
& =X(f) \cdot Y(g)+f \cdot X(Y(g))-f \cdot Y(X(g)) \\
& =(X(f) \cdot Y+f \cdot[X, Y])(g)
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves the first statement and the second follows from the skewsymmetry of the Lie bracket.

Definition 4.20. A real vector space $(V,+, \cdot)$ equipped with an operation [, ] : $V \times V \rightarrow V$ is said to be a Lie algebra if the following relations hold
(i) $[\lambda X+\mu Y, Z]=\lambda[X, Z]+\mu[Y, Z]$,
(ii) $[X, Y]=-[Y, X]$,
(iii) $[X,[Y, Z]]+[Z,[X, Y]]+[Y,[Z, X]]=0$
for all $X, Y, Z \in V$ and $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$. The equation (iii) is called the Jacobi identity.

Example 4.21. Let $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ be the standard 3-dimensional real vector space generated by $X=(1,0,0), Y=(0,1,0)$ and $Z=(0,0,1)$. Let $\times$ be the standard cross product on $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ and define the skew-symmetric bilinear operation [, ]: $\mathbb{R}^{3} \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{3}$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {[X, Y]=X \times Y=Z} \\
& {[Z, X]=Z \times X=Y} \\
& {[Y, Z]=Y \times Z=X}
\end{aligned}
$$

This turns $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ into a Lie algebra. Compare this with Exercise 4.7.
Theorem 4.22. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold. The vector space $C^{\infty}(T M)$ of smooth vector fields on $M$ equipped with the Lie bracket [, ] : $C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)$ is a Lie algebra.

Proof. See Exercise 4.4.
Definition 4.23. If $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ is a surjective map between differentiable manifolds, then two vector fields $X \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $\bar{X} \in$ $C^{\infty}(T N)$ are said to be $\phi$-related if $d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)=\bar{X}_{\phi(p)}$ for all $p \in M$. In this situation we write $d \phi(X)=\bar{X}$.

Example 4.24. Let $S^{1}$ be the unit circle in the complex plane and $\phi: S^{1} \rightarrow S^{1}$ be the map given by $\phi(z)=z^{2}$. Note that this is surjective but not bijective. Further let $X$ be the vector field on $S^{1}$ satisfying $X(z)=i z$. Then

$$
d \phi_{z}\left(X_{z}\right)=\left.\frac{d}{d \theta}\left(\phi\left(z e^{i \theta}\right)\right)\right|_{\theta=0}=\left.\frac{d}{d \theta}\left(\left(z e^{i \theta}\right)^{2}\right)\right|_{\theta=0}=2 i z^{2}=2 X_{\phi(z)} .
$$

This shows that the vector field $X$ is $\phi$-related to $\bar{X}=2 X$.
Example 4.25. Let $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a surjective $C^{1}$-function and $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $x \neq y, f(x)=f(y)$ and $f^{\prime}(x) \neq f^{\prime}(y)$. Further let $\gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the curve with $\gamma(t)=t$ and define the vector field $X \in C^{1}(\mathbb{R})$ by $X_{t}=\dot{\gamma}(t)$. Then for each $t \in \mathbb{R}$ we have

$$
d f_{t}\left(X_{t}\right)=(f \circ \gamma(t))^{\prime}=f^{\prime}(t)
$$

If $\bar{X} \in C^{1}(\mathbb{R})$ is a vector field which is $f$-related to $X$ then

$$
\bar{X}_{f(x)}=d f_{x}\left(X_{x}\right)=f^{\prime}(x) \neq f^{\prime}(y)=d f_{y}\left(X_{y}\right)=\bar{X}_{f(y)}
$$

This contradicts the existence of such a vector field $\bar{X}$.
Proposition 4.26. Let $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ be a surjective map between differentiable manifolds and $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M), \bar{X}, \bar{Y} \in C^{\infty}(T N)$ such that $d \phi(X)=\bar{X}$ and $d \phi(Y)=\bar{Y}$. Then

$$
d \phi([X, Y])=[\bar{X}, \bar{Y}] .
$$

Proof. Let $p \in M$ and $f: N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a smooth function, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
d \phi_{p}\left([X, Y]_{p}\right)(f) & =[X, Y]_{p}(f \circ \phi) \\
& =X_{p}(Y(f \circ \phi))-Y_{p}(X(f \circ \phi)) \\
& =X_{p}(d \phi(Y)(f) \circ \phi)-Y_{p}(d \phi(X)(f) \circ \phi) \\
& =d \phi(X)_{\phi(p)}(d \phi(Y)(f))-d \phi(Y)_{\phi(p)}(d \phi(X)(f)) \\
& =[\bar{X}, \bar{Y}]_{\phi(p)}(f) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proposition 4.27. Let $M$ and $N$ be differentiable manifolds and $\phi: M \rightarrow N$ be a diffeomorphism. If $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ are vector fields on $M$, then $d \phi(X)$ is a vector field on $N$ and the tangent map $d \phi: C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T N)$ is a Lie algebra homomorphism i.e.

$$
d \phi([X, Y])=[d \phi(X), d \phi(Y)] .
$$

Proof. The fact that $\phi$ is bijective implies that $d \phi(X)$ is a section of the tangent bundle. That $d \phi(X)$ is smooth follows directly from the fact that

$$
d \phi(X)(f)(\phi(p))=X(f \circ \phi)(p)
$$

The last statement is a direct consequence of Proposition 4.26.
Definition 4.28. Let $M$ be a differentiable manifold. Two vector fields $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ are said to commute if their Lie bracket vanishes i.e. $[X, Y]=0$.

Proposition 4.29. Let $M$ be a differentiable manifold, $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$ and

$$
\left\{\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}} \right\rvert\, k=1,2, \ldots, m\right\}
$$

be the induced local frame for the tangent bundle TM. Then the local frame fields commute i.e.

$$
\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}, \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}\right]=0 \text { for all } k, l=1, \ldots, m
$$

Proof. The map $x: U \rightarrow x(U)$ is bijective and differentiable. The vector field $\partial / \partial x_{k} \in C^{\infty}(T U)$ is $x$-related to the coordinate vector field $\partial_{e_{k}} \in C^{\infty}(T x(U))$. Then Proposition 4.27 implies that

$$
d x\left(\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}, \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}}\right]\right)=\left[\partial_{e_{k}}, \partial_{e_{l}}\right]=0
$$

The last equation is an immediate consequence of the following well known fact

$$
\left[\partial_{e_{k}}, \partial_{e_{l}}\right](f)=\partial_{e_{k}}\left(\partial_{e_{l}}(f)\right)-\partial_{e_{l}}\left(\partial_{e_{k}}(f)\right)=0
$$

for all $f \in C^{2}(x(U))$. The result now follows from the fact that the linear map $d x_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{x(p)} \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is bijective for all $p \in U$.

We will now introduce the important notion of a left-invariant vector field on a Lie group. This will play an important role in what follows.

Definition 4.30. Let $G$ be a Lie group. Then a vector field $X \in$ $C^{\infty}(T G)$ on $G$ is said to be left-invariant if it is $L_{p}$-related to itself for all $p \in G$ i.e.

$$
\left(d L_{p}\right)_{q}\left(X_{q}\right)=X_{p q} \text { for all } p, q \in G .
$$

The set of left-invariant vector fields on $G$ is called the Lie algebra of $G$ and denoted by $\mathfrak{g}$.

Remark 4.31. It should be noted that if $e$ is the neutral element of the Lie group $G$ and $X \in \mathfrak{g}$ is a left-invariant vector field then

$$
X_{p}=\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(X_{e}\right)
$$

This shows that the value $X_{p}$ of $X$ at $p$ is completely determined by the value $X_{e}$ at $e$. Hence the map $\Phi: T_{e} G \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ given by

$$
\Phi: X_{e} \mapsto\left(X: p \mapsto\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(X_{e}\right)\right)
$$

is a vector space isomorphism. As a direct consequence we see that the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is a finite dimensional subspace of $C^{\infty}(T G)$ of the same dimension as $G$.

Proposition 4.32. If $G$ is a Lie group then its Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ is a Lie subalgebra of $C^{\infty}(T G)$ i.e. if $X, Y \in \mathfrak{g}$ then $[X, Y] \in \mathfrak{g}$.

Proof. If $p \in G$ then the left translation $L_{p}: G \rightarrow G$ is a diffeomorphism so it follows from Proposition 4.27 that

$$
d L_{p}([X, Y])=\left[d L_{p}(X), d L_{p}(Y)\right]=[X, Y]
$$

for all $X, Y \in \mathfrak{g}$. This proves that the Lie bracket $[X, Y]$ of two leftinvariant vector fields $X, Y$ is also left-invariant.

The linear isomorphism $\Phi: T_{e} G \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ given by

$$
\Phi: X_{e} \mapsto\left(X: p \mapsto\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(X_{e}\right)\right)
$$

induces a natural Lie bracket [, ]: $T_{e} G \times T_{e} G \rightarrow T_{e} G$ on the tangent space $T_{e} G$ via

$$
\left[X_{e}, Y_{e}\right]=[X, Y]_{e}
$$

Notation 4.33. For the classical matrix Lie groups introduced in Chapter 3, we denote their Lie algebras by $\mathfrak{g l}_{m}(\mathbb{R}), \mathfrak{s l}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$, $\mathfrak{o}(m)$, $\mathfrak{s o}(m), \mathfrak{g l}_{m}(\mathbb{C}), \mathfrak{s l}_{m}(\mathbb{C}), \mathfrak{u}(m)$ and $\mathfrak{s u}(m)$, respectively.

The following result is a useful tool for handling the Lie brackets for the classical matrix Lie groups. They can simply be calculated by means of the usual matrix multiplication.

Proposition 4.34. Let $G$ be one of the classical matrix Lie groups and $T_{e} G$ be the tangent space of $G$ at the neutral element $e$. Then the Lie bracket [, ]: $T_{e} G \times T_{e} G \rightarrow T_{e} G$ is given by

$$
\left[X_{e}, Y_{e}\right]=X_{e} \cdot Y_{e}-Y_{e} \cdot X_{e}
$$

where $\cdot$ is the standard matrix multiplication.
Proof. We prove the result for the general linear group $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$. For the other real groups the result follows from the fact that they are all subgroups of $\mathbf{G L} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$. The same proof can be used in the complex cases.

Let $X, Y \in \mathfrak{g l}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ be left-invariant vector fields, $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function defined locally around the identity element $e$ and $p$ be an arbitrary point of $U$. Then the first order derivative $X_{p}(f)$ of $f$ at $p$ is given by

$$
X_{p}(f)=\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(f\left(p \cdot \operatorname{Exp}\left(t X_{e}\right)\right)\right)\right|_{t=0}=d f_{p}\left(p \cdot X_{e}\right)=d f_{p}\left(X_{p}\right)
$$

The general linear group $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ so we can apply standard arguments from multivariable calculus. The second order derivative $Y_{e}(X(f))$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
Y_{e}(X(f)) & =\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(X_{\operatorname{Exp}\left(t Y_{e}\right)}(f)\right)\right|_{t=0} \\
& =\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(d f_{\operatorname{Exp}\left(t Y_{e}\right)}\left(\operatorname{Exp}\left(t Y_{e}\right) \cdot X_{e}\right)\right)\right|_{t=0} \\
& =d^{2} f_{e}\left(Y_{e}, X_{e}\right)+d f_{e}\left(Y_{e} \cdot X_{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Here $d^{2} f_{e}$ is the symmetric Hessian of the function $f$. As an immediate consequence we obtain

$$
[X, Y]_{e}(f)=X_{e}(Y(f))-Y_{e}(X(f))
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= & d^{2} f_{e}( \\
\quad & \left.X_{e}, Y_{e}\right)+d f_{e}\left(X_{e} \cdot Y_{e}\right) \\
& \quad-d^{2} f_{e}\left(Y_{e}, X_{e}\right)-d f_{e}\left(Y_{e} \cdot X_{e}\right) \\
= & d f_{e}\left(X_{e} \cdot Y_{e}-Y_{e} \cdot X_{e}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

This last calculation implies the statement.
Theorem 4.35. The tangent bundle TG of a Lie group $G$ is trivial.
Proof. Let $\left\{\left(X_{1}\right)_{e}, \ldots,\left(X_{m}\right)_{e}\right\}$ be a basis for $T_{e} G$ and extend each $\left(X_{k}\right)_{e} \in T_{e} G$ to the left-invariant vector field $X_{k} \in \mathfrak{g}$ with

$$
\left(X_{k}\right)_{p}=\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(\left(X_{k}\right)_{e}\right)
$$

For each $p \in G$ the left translation $L_{p}: G \rightarrow G$ is a diffeomorphism so the set $\left\{\left(X_{1}\right)_{p}, \ldots,\left(X_{m}\right)_{p}\right\}$ is a basis for the tangent space $T_{p} G$. This means that the map $\psi: T G \rightarrow G \times \mathbb{R}^{m}$ given by

$$
\psi:\left(p, \sum_{k=1}^{m} v_{k} \cdot\left(X_{k}\right)_{p}\right) \mapsto\left(p,\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m}\right)\right)
$$

is well defined. It is a global bundle chart so the tangent bundle $T G$ is therefore trivial.

## Exercises

Exercise 4.1. Let $(M, \hat{\mathcal{A}})$ be a smooth manifold, $(U, x),(V, y)$ be charts such that $U \cap V$ is non-empty and

$$
f=y \circ x^{-1}: x(U \cap V) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}
$$

be the corresponding transition map. Show that the local frames

$$
\left\{\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}} \right\rvert\, i=1, \ldots, m\right\} \text { and }\left\{\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial y_{j}} \right\rvert\, j=1, \ldots, m\right\}
$$

for $T M$ on $U \cap V$ are related as follows

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}}=\sum_{j=1}^{m} \frac{\partial\left(f_{j} \circ x\right)}{\partial x_{i}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial y_{j}}
$$

Exercise 4.2. Let $\mathbf{S O}(m)$ be the special orthogonal group.
(i) Find a basis for the tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{S O}(m)$,
(ii) construct a non-vanishing vector field $Z \in C^{\infty}(T \mathbf{S O}(m))$,
(iii) determine all smooth vector fields on $\mathbf{S O}(2)$.

The Hairy Ball Theorem. There does not exist a continuous non-vanishing vector field $X \in C^{0}\left(T S^{2 m}\right)$ on the even dimensional sphere $S^{2 m}$.

Exercise 4.3. Employ the Hairy Ball Theorem to show that the tangent bundle $T S^{2 m}$ is not trivial. Then construct a non-vanishing vector field $X \in C^{\infty}\left(T S^{2 m+1}\right)$ on the odd-dimensional sphere $S^{2 m+1}$.

Exercise 4.4. Find a proof of Theorem 4.22.
Exercise 4.5. The Lie algebra $\mathfrak{s l}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ of the special linear group $\mathrm{SL}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ is generated by

$$
X=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & -1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad Y=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right), \quad Z=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

Show that the Lie brackets of $\mathfrak{s l}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ satisfy

$$
[X, Y]=2 Z, \quad[Z, X]=2 Y, \quad[Y, Z]=-2 X
$$

Exercise 4.6. The Lie algebra $\mathfrak{s u ( 2 )}$ of the special unitary group $\mathbf{S U}(2)$ is generated by

$$
X=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & -1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad Y=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
i & 0 \\
0 & -i
\end{array}\right), \quad Z=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & i \\
i & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

Show that the corresponding Lie bracket relations are given by

$$
[X, Y]=2 Z, \quad[Z, X]=2 Y, \quad[Y, Z]=2 X
$$

Exercise 4.7. The Lie algebra $\mathfrak{s o}(3)$ of the special orthogonal group $\mathbf{S O}(3)$ is generated by

$$
X=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & -1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad Y=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad Z=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

Show that the corresponding Lie bracket relations are given by

$$
[X, Y]=Z, \quad[Z, X]=Y, \quad[Y, Z]=X .
$$

Compare this result with Example 4.21.

## CHAPTER 5

## Riemannian Manifolds

In this chapter we introduce the notion of a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$. The metric $g$ provides us with a scalar product on each tangent space and can be used to measure angles and the lengths of curves in the manifold. This defines a distance function and turns the manifold into a metric space in a natural way. The Riemannian metric on a differentiable manifold is the most important example of what is called a tensor field.

Let $M$ be a smooth manifold, $C^{\infty}(M)$ denote the commutative ring of smooth functions on $M$ and $C^{\infty}(T M)$ be the set of smooth vector fields on $M$ forming a module over $C^{\infty}(M)$. Put

$$
C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)=C^{\infty}(M)
$$

and for each positive integer $r$ let

$$
C_{r}^{\infty}(T M)=C^{\infty}(T M) \otimes \cdots \otimes C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

be the $r$-fold tensor product of $C^{\infty}(T M)$ over the commutative ring $C^{\infty}(M)$.

Definition 5.1. Let $M$ be a differentiable manifold. A smooth tensor field $A$ on $M$ of type $(r, s)$ is a map

$$
A: C_{r}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{s}^{\infty}(T M)
$$

which is multilinear over the commutative ring $C^{\infty}(M)$ i.e. satisfying

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A\left(X_{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{k-1} \otimes(f \cdot Y+g \cdot Z) \otimes X_{k+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{r}\right) \\
= & f \cdot A\left(X_{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{k-1} \otimes Y \otimes X_{k+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{r}\right) \\
& +g \cdot A\left(X_{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{k-1} \otimes Z \otimes X_{k+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{r}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}, Y, Z \in C^{\infty}(T M), f, g \in C^{\infty}(M)$ and $k=1, \ldots, r$.
Notation 5.2. For the rest of this work we shall for $A\left(X_{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes X_{r}\right)$ use the notation

$$
A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)
$$

The next fundamental result provides us with the most important property of a tensor field. It shows that the value $A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)(p)$ of $A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)$ at a point $p \in M$ only depends on the values of the vector fields $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}$ at $p$ and is independent of their values away from $p$.

Proposition 5.3. Let $A: C_{r}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{s}^{\infty}(T M)$ be a tensor field of type $(r, s)$ and $p \in M$. Let $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}$ and $Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{r}$ be smooth vector fields on $M$ such that $\left(X_{k}\right)_{p}=\left(Y_{k}\right)_{p}$ for each $k=1, \ldots, r$. Then

$$
A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)(p)=A\left(Y_{1}, \ldots, Y_{r}\right)(p) .
$$

Proof. We shall prove the statement for $r=1$, the rest follows by induction. Put $X=X_{1}$ and $Y=Y_{1}$ and let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$. Choose a function $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$ such that $f(p)=1$,

$$
\operatorname{support}(f)=\overline{\{p \in M \mid f(p) \neq 0\}}
$$

is contained in $U$ and define the vector fields $v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m} \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ on $M$ by

$$
\left(v_{k}\right)_{q}=\left\{\begin{array}{cl}
f(q) \cdot\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}\right)_{q} & \text { if } q \in U \\
0 & \text { if } q \notin U
\end{array}\right.
$$

Then there exist functions $\rho_{k}, \sigma_{k} \in C^{\infty}(M)$ such that

$$
f \cdot X=\sum_{k=1}^{m} \rho_{k} \cdot v_{k} \quad \text { and } \quad f \cdot Y=\sum_{k=1}^{m} \sigma_{k} \cdot v_{k} .
$$

This implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
A(X)(p) & =f(p) A(X)(p) \\
& =(f \cdot A(X))(p) \\
& =A(f \cdot X)(p) \\
& =A\left(\sum_{k=1}^{m} \rho_{k} \cdot v_{k}\right)(p) \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(\rho_{k} \cdot A\left(v_{k}\right)\right)(p) \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{m} \rho_{k}(p) A\left(v_{k}\right)(p)
\end{aligned}
$$

and similarly

$$
A(Y)(p)=\sum_{k=1}^{m} \sigma_{k}(p) A\left(v_{k}\right)(p) .
$$

The fact that $X_{p}=Y_{p}$ shows that $\rho_{k}(p)=\sigma_{k}(p)$ for all $k$. As a direct consequence we see that

$$
A(X)(p)=A(Y)(p)
$$

Following the result of Proposition 5.3 we now introduce the following useful notation.

Notation 5.4. For a tensor field $A: C_{r}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{s}^{\infty}(T M)$ of type $(r, s)$ we shall by $A_{p}$ denote the real multilinear restriction of $A$ to the $r$-fold tensor product $T_{p} M \otimes \cdots \otimes T_{p} M$ of the real vector space $T_{p} M$ given by

$$
A_{p}:\left(\left(X_{1}\right)_{p}, \ldots,\left(X_{r}\right)_{p}\right) \mapsto A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)(p)
$$

Next we introduce the notion of a Riemannian metric. This is the most important example of a tensor field in Riemannian geometry.

Definition 5.5. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold. A Riemannian metric $g$ on $M$ is a tensor field $g: C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)$ such that for each $p \in M$ the restriction $g_{p}$ of $g$ to the tensor product $T_{p} M \otimes T_{p} M$ with

$$
g_{p}:\left(X_{p}, Y_{p}\right) \mapsto g(X, Y)(p)
$$

is a scalar product on the tangent space $T_{p} M$. The pair $(M, g)$ is said to be a Riemannian manifold. The study of Riemannian manifolds is called Riemannian Geometry. The geometric properties of $(M, g)$ which only depend on the metric $g$ are said to be intrinsic or metric properties.

Definition 5.6. Let $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a $C^{1}$-curve in $M$. Then the length $L(\gamma)$ of $\gamma$ is defined by

$$
L(\gamma)=\int_{I} \sqrt{g(\dot{\gamma}(t), \dot{\gamma}(t))} d t
$$

The classical $m$-dimensional Euclidean space $E^{m}$ is a Riemannian manifold as follows.

Example 5.7. The standard Euclidean scalar product on the vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ given by

$$
\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}=X^{t} \cdot Y=\sum_{k=1}^{m} X_{k} Y_{k}
$$

defines a Riemannian metric on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. The Riemannian manifold

$$
E^{m}=\left(\mathbb{R}^{m},\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}\right)
$$

is called the $m$-dimensional Euclidean space.

The standard punctured round sphere has the following description as a Riemannian manifold.

Example 5.8. Equip the vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ with the Riemannian metric $g$ given by

$$
g_{p}(X, Y)=\frac{4}{\left(1+|p|_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}^{2}\right)^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}
$$

The Riemannian manifold $\Sigma^{m}=\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}, g\right)$ is called the $m$-dimensional punctured round sphere. Let $\gamma: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \Sigma^{m}$ be the curve with

$$
\gamma: t \mapsto(t, 0, \ldots, 0) .
$$

Then the length $L(\gamma)$ of $\gamma$ can be determined as follows.

$$
L(\gamma)=2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{\sqrt{\langle\dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma}\rangle}}{1+|\gamma|^{2}} d t=2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \frac{d t}{1+t^{2}}=2[\arctan (t)]_{0}^{\infty}=\pi .
$$

The important hyperbolic space $H^{m}$ can be modelled in different ways. In the following Example 5.9 we present it as the open unit ball. For the upper half space model see Exercise 8.8.

Example 5.9. Let $B_{1}^{m}(0)$ be the open unit ball in $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ given by

$$
B_{1}^{m}(0)=\left\{\left.p \in \mathbb{R}^{m}| | p\right|_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}<1\right\} .
$$

By the $m$-dimensional hyperbolic space we mean $B_{1}^{m}(0)$ equipped with the Riemannian metric

$$
g_{p}(X, Y)=\frac{4}{\left(1-|p|_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}^{2}\right)^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}
$$

Let $\gamma:(0,1) \rightarrow B_{1}^{m}(0)$ be the curve given by

$$
\gamma: t \mapsto(t, 0, \ldots, 0) .
$$

Then the length $L(\gamma)$ of $\gamma$ can be determined as follows.

$$
L(\gamma)=2 \int_{0}^{1} \frac{\sqrt{\langle\dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma}\rangle}}{1-|\gamma|^{2}} d t=2 \int_{0}^{1} \frac{d t}{1-t^{2}}=\left[\log \left(\frac{1+t}{1-t}\right)\right]_{0}^{1}=\infty .
$$

The following result tells us that a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ has the structure of a metric space $(M, d)$ in a natural way.

Proposition 5.10. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold which is path-connected. For two points $p, q \in M$ let $C_{p q}$ denote the set of $C^{1}$ curves $\gamma:[0,1] \rightarrow M$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\gamma(1)=q$ and define the function $d: M \times M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{0}^{+}$by

$$
d(p, q)=\inf \left\{L(\gamma) \mid \gamma \in C_{p q}\right\}
$$

Then $(M, d)$ is a metric space i.e. for all $p, q, r \in M$ we have
(i) $d(p, q) \geq 0$,
(ii) $d(p, q)=0$ if and only if $p=q$,
(iii) $d(p, q)=d(q, p)$,
(iv) $d(p, q) \leq d(p, r)+d(r, q)$.

The topology on $M$ induced by the metric $d$ is identical to the one $M$ carries as a topological manifold $(M, \mathcal{T})$, see Definition 2.1.

Proof. See for example: Peter Petersen, Riemannian Geometry, Graduate Texts in Mathematics 171, Springer (1998).

A Riemannian metric on a differentiable manifold induces a Riemannian metric on its submanifolds as follows.

Definition 5.11. Let ( $N, h$ ) be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold. Then the smooth tensor field $g: C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(M)$ given by

$$
g(X, Y): p \mapsto h_{p}\left(X_{p}, Y_{p}\right)
$$

is a Riemannian metric on $M$. It is called the induced metric on $M$ in $(N, h)$.

We can now equip some of the manifolds which we introduced in Chapter 2 with a Riemannian metric.

Example 5.12. The standard Euclidean metric $\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}$ on $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ induces Riemannian metrics on the following submanifolds.
(i) the sphere $S^{m} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$, with $n=m+1$,
(ii) the tangent bundle $T S^{m} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$, where $n=2(m+1)$,
(iii) the torus $T^{m} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n}$, with $n=2 m$,

Example 5.13. The vector space $\mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ of complex $m \times m$ matrices carries a natural Riemannian metric $g$ given by

$$
g(Z, W)=\operatorname{Re}\left(\operatorname{trace}\left(\bar{Z}^{t} W\right)\right)
$$

for all $Z, W \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$. This induces metrics on the submanifolds of $\mathbb{C}^{m \times m}$ such as $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ and the classical Lie groups $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R}), \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$, $\mathbf{O}(m), \mathbf{S O}(m), \mathbf{G} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{C}), \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{C}), \mathbf{U}(m), \mathbf{S U}(m)$.

Our next important step is to prove that every differentiable manifold $M$ can be equipped with a Riemannian metric $g$. For this we need the following fact from topology.

Fact 5.14. Let $(M, \mathcal{T})$ be a topological manifold. Let the collection $\left(U_{\alpha}\right)_{\alpha \in \mathcal{I}}$ be an open covering of $M$ such that for each $\alpha \in \mathcal{I}$ the pair $\left(U_{\alpha}, \phi_{\alpha}\right)$ is a chart on $M$. Then there exists
(i) a locally finite open refinement $\left(W_{\beta}\right)_{\beta \in \mathcal{J}}$ such that for all $\beta \in$ $\mathcal{J}, W_{\beta}$ is an open neighbourhood for a chart $\left(W_{\beta}, \phi_{\beta}\right)$, and
(ii) a partition of unity $\left(f_{\beta}\right)_{\beta \in \mathcal{J}}$ such that support $\left(f_{\beta}\right) \subset W_{\beta}$.

Theorem 5.15. Let $\left(M^{m}, \hat{\mathcal{A}}\right)$ be a differentiable manifold. Then there exists a Riemannian metric $g$ on $M$.

Proof. For each point $p \in M$ let $\left(U_{p}, \phi_{p}\right) \in \hat{\mathcal{A}}$ be a chart such that $p \in U_{p}$. Then $\left(U_{p}\right)_{p \in M}$ is an open covering as in Fact 5.14. Let $\left(W_{\beta}\right)_{\beta \in \mathcal{J}}$ be a locally finite open refinement, $\left(W_{\beta}, x^{\beta}\right)$ be charts on $M$ and $\left(f_{\beta}\right)_{\beta \in \mathcal{J}}$ be a partition of unity such that $\operatorname{support}\left(f_{\beta}\right)$ is contained in $W_{\beta}$. Let $\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}$ be the Euclidean metric on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. Then for $\beta \in \mathcal{J}$ define $g_{\beta}: C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)$ by

$$
g_{\beta}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}^{\beta}}, \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{l}^{\beta}}\right)(p)=\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
f_{\beta}(p) \cdot\left\langle e_{k}, e_{l}\right\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}} & \text { if } p \in W_{\beta} \\
0 & \text { if } p \notin W_{\beta}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Note that at each point only finitely many of $g_{\beta}$ are non-zero. This means that the well defined tensor $g: C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)$ given by

$$
g=\sum_{\beta \in \mathcal{J}} g_{\beta}
$$

is a Riemannian metric on $M$.
Definition 5.16. Let $(M, g)$ and $(N, h)$ be Riemannian manifolds. A map $\phi:(M, g) \rightarrow(N, h)$ is said to be conformal if there exists a function $\lambda: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$
e^{\lambda(p)} \cdot g_{p}\left(X_{p}, Y_{p}\right)=h_{\phi(p)}\left(d \phi_{p}\left(X_{p}\right), d \phi_{p}\left(Y_{p}\right)\right),
$$

for all $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $p \in M$. The positive real-valued function $e^{\lambda}$ is called the conformal factor of $\phi$. A conformal map with $\lambda \equiv 0$ i.e. $e^{\lambda} \equiv 1$ is said to be isometric. An isometric diffeomorphism is called an isometry.

Definition 5.17. For a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ we denote by $\mathcal{I}(M)$ the set of its isometries. If $\phi, \psi \in \mathcal{I}(M)$ then it is clear that the composition $\psi \circ \phi$ and the inverse $\phi^{-1}$ are also isometries. The operation is clearly associative and the identity map is its neutral element. The pair $(\mathcal{I}(M), \circ)$ is called the isometry group of $(M, g)$.

Definition 5.18. The isometry group $\mathcal{I}(M)$ of a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ is said to be transitive if for all $p, q \in M$ there exists an isometry $\phi_{p q}: M \rightarrow M$ such that $\phi_{p q}(p)=q$. In that case $(M, g)$ is called a Riemannian homogeneous space.

Example 5.19. On the standard unit sphere $S^{m}$ we have the action $\alpha: \mathbf{O}(m+1) \times S^{m} \rightarrow S^{m}$ of the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m+1)$ given by

$$
\alpha:(p, x) \mapsto p \cdot x
$$

where • is the standard matrix multiplication. The following shows that this action on $S^{m}$ is isometric

$$
\langle p X, p Y\rangle=X^{t} p^{t} p Y=X^{t} Y=\langle X, Y\rangle .
$$

This means that the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m+1)$ is a subgroup of the isometry group $\mathcal{I}\left(S^{m}\right)$. It is easily seen that $\mathbf{O}(m+1)$ acts transitively on the sphere $S^{m}$ so this is a homogeneous space.

Example 5.20. The standard Euclidean scalar product on the real vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ induces a Riemannian metric on the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ given by

$$
g(X, Y)=\operatorname{trace}\left(X^{t} \cdot Y\right)
$$

Applying the left translation $L_{p}: \mathbf{O}(m) \rightarrow \mathbf{O}(m)$, with $L_{p}: q \mapsto p q$, we see that the tangent space $T_{p} \mathbf{O}(m)$ of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ at $p$ is

$$
T_{p} \mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{p X \mid X^{t}+X=0\right\} .
$$

The differential $\left(d L_{p}\right)_{q}: T_{q} \mathbf{O}(m) \rightarrow T_{p q} \mathbf{O}(m)$ of $L_{p}$ at $q \in \mathbf{O}(m)$ satisfies

$$
\left(d L_{p}\right)_{q}: q X \mapsto p q X
$$

We then have

$$
\begin{aligned}
g_{p q}\left(\left(d L_{p}\right)_{q}(q X),\left(d L_{p}\right)_{q}(q Y)\right) & =\operatorname{trace}\left((p q X)^{t} p q Y\right) \\
& =\operatorname{trace}\left(X^{t} q^{t} p^{t} p q Y\right) \\
& =\operatorname{trace}(q X)^{t}(q Y) . \\
& =g_{q}(q X, q Y) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that the left translation $L_{p}: \mathbf{O}(m) \rightarrow \mathbf{O}(m)$ is an isometry for all $p \in \mathbf{O}(m)$.

Definition 5.21. A Riemannian metric $g$ on a Lie group $G$ is said to be left-invariant if for each $p \in G$ the left translation $L_{p}: G \rightarrow G$ is an isometry. A Lie group $(G, g)$ with a left-invariant metric is called a Riemannian Lie group.

Remark 5.22. It should be noted that if $(G, g)$ is a Riemannian Lie group and $X, Y \in \mathfrak{g}$ are left-invariant vector fields then

$$
g_{p}\left(X_{p}, Y_{p}\right)=g_{p}\left(\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(X_{e}\right),\left(d L_{p}\right)_{e}\left(Y_{e}\right)\right)=g_{e}\left(X_{e}, Y_{e}\right) .
$$

This tells us that a left-invariant metric $g$ on $G$ is completely determined by the scalar product $g_{e}: T_{e} G \times T_{e} G \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ on the tangent space at the neutral element $e \in G$.

Theorem 5.23. A Riemannian Lie group $(G, g)$ is a Riemannian homogeneous space.

Proof. For arbitrary elements $p, q \in G$ the left-translation $\phi_{p q}=$ $L_{q p^{-1}}$ by $q p^{-1} \in G$ is an isometry satisfying $\phi_{p q}(p)=q$. This shows that the isometry group $\mathcal{I}(G)$ is transitive.

In Example 2.6 we introduced the real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ as a differentiable manifold. We shall now equip this with an interesting Riemannian metric.

Example 5.24. Let $S^{m}$ be the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ and $\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ be the vector space of real symmetric $(m+1) \times(m+1)$ matrices equipped with the Riemannian metric $g$ given by

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{1}{8} \operatorname{trace}\left(X^{t} \cdot Y\right)
$$

As in Example 3.25, we define the immersion $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ by

$$
\phi: p \mapsto\left(\rho_{p}: q \mapsto 2\langle q, p\rangle p-q\right) .
$$

This maps a point $p \in S^{m}$ to the reflection $\rho_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ about the real line generated by $p$. This is clearly a symmetric bijective linear map.

Let $\alpha, \beta: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{m}$ be two curves such that $\alpha(0)=p=\beta(0)$ and put $X=\dot{\alpha}(0), Y=\dot{\beta}(0)$. Then for $\gamma \in\{\alpha, \beta\}$ we have

$$
d \phi_{p}(\dot{\gamma}(0))=(q \mapsto 2\langle q, \dot{\gamma}(0)\rangle p+2\langle q, p\rangle \dot{\gamma}(0)) .
$$

If $\mathcal{B}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
g\left(d \phi_{p}(X), d \phi_{p}(Y)\right) & =\frac{1}{8} \operatorname{trace}\left(d \phi_{p}(X)^{t} \cdot d \phi_{p}(Y)\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{8} \sum_{q \in \mathcal{B}}\left\langle q, d \phi_{p}(X)^{t} \cdot d \phi_{p}(Y) q\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{8} \sum_{q \in \mathcal{B}}\left\langle d \phi_{p}(X) q, d \phi_{p}(Y) q\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{q \in \mathcal{B}}\langle\langle q, X\rangle p+\langle q, p\rangle X,\langle q, Y\rangle p+\langle q, p\rangle Y\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{q \in \mathcal{B}}\{\langle p, p\rangle\langle X, q\rangle\langle q, Y\rangle+\langle X, Y\rangle\langle p, q\rangle\langle p, q\rangle\} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\{\langle X, Y\rangle+\langle X, Y\rangle\} \\
& =\langle X, Y\rangle .
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves that the immersion $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ is isometric. In Example 3.25 we have seen that the image $\phi\left(S^{m}\right)$ can be identified with
the real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$. This inherits the induced metric from $\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$. The map $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} P^{m}$ is what is called an isometric double cover of $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$.

Proposition 5.25. Let $\mathbb{R} P^{2}$ be the two dimensional real projective plane equipped with the Riemannian metric introduced in Example 5.24. Then the surface area of $\mathbb{R} P^{2}$ is $2 \pi$.

Proof. Example 5.24 shows that if $m$ is a positive integer then the map $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} P^{m}$ is an isometric double cover. Hence this is locally volume preserving. This implies that the $m$-dimensional volume satisfies

$$
\operatorname{vol}\left(S^{m}\right)=2 \cdot \operatorname{vol}\left(\mathbb{R} P^{m}\right)
$$

In particular,

$$
\operatorname{vol}\left(\mathbb{R} P^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2} \cdot \operatorname{vol}\left(S^{2}\right)=2 \pi
$$

Long before John Nash became famous in Hollywood he proved the next remarkable result in his paper The embedding problem for Riemannian manifolds, Ann. of Math. 63 (1956), 20-63. It implies that every Riemannian manifold can be realised as a submanifold of a Euclidean space. The original proof of Nash was later simplified, see for example Matthias Günther, On the perturbation problem associated to isometric embeddings of Riemannian manifolds, Annals of Global Analysis and Geometry 7 (1989), 69-77.

Deep Result 5.26. For $3 \leq r \leq \infty$ let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian $C^{r}$-manifold. Then there exists an isometric $C^{r}$-embedding of $(M, g)$ into a Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{n}$.

Remark 5.27. We shall now see that local parametrizations are very useful tools for studying the intrinsic geometry of a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$. Let $p$ be a point of $M$ and $\hat{\psi}: U \rightarrow M$ be a local parametrization of $M$ with $q \in U$ and $\hat{\psi}(q)=p$. The differential $d \hat{\psi}_{q}$ : $T_{q} \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} M$ is bijective so, following the inverse function theorem, there exist neighbourhoods $U_{q}$ of $q$ and $U_{p}$ of $p$ such that the restriction $\psi=\left.\hat{\psi}\right|_{U_{q}}: U_{q} \rightarrow U_{p}$ is a diffeomorphism. On $U_{q}$ we have the canonical frame $\left\{e_{1}, \ldots, e_{m}\right\}$ for $T U_{q}$ so $\left\{d \psi\left(e_{1}\right), \ldots, d \psi\left(e_{m}\right)\right\}$ is a local frame for $T M$ over $U_{p}$. We then define the pull-back metric $\tilde{g}=\psi^{*} g$ on $U_{q}$ by

$$
\tilde{g}\left(e_{k}, e_{l}\right)=g\left(d \psi\left(e_{k}\right), d \psi\left(e_{l}\right)\right) .
$$

Then $\psi:\left(U_{q}, \tilde{g}\right) \rightarrow\left(U_{p}, g\right)$ is an isometry so the intrinsic geometry of $\left(U_{q}, \tilde{g}\right)$ and that of $\left(U_{p}, g\right)$ are exactly the same.

Example 5.28. Let $G$ be one of the classical Lie groups and $e$ be the neutral element of $G$. Let $\left\{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right\}$ be a basis for the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ of $G$. For $p \in G$ define $\psi_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow G$ by

$$
\psi_{p}:\left(t_{1}, \ldots, t_{m}\right) \mapsto L_{p}\left(\prod_{k=1}^{m} \operatorname{Exp}\left(t_{k} X_{k}(e)\right)\right)
$$

where $L_{p}: G \rightarrow G$ is the left translation given by $L_{p}(q)=p q$. Then

$$
\left(d \psi_{p}\right)_{0}\left(e_{k}\right)=X_{k}(p)
$$

for all $k$. This means that the differential $\left(d \psi_{p}\right)_{0}: T_{0} \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} G$ is an isomorphism so there exist open neighbourhoods $U_{0}$ of 0 and $U_{p}$ of $p$ such that the restriction of $\psi$ to $U_{0}$ is bijective onto its image $U_{p}$ and hence a local parametrization of $G$ around $p$.

We shall now study the normal bundle of a submanifold of a given Riemannian manifold. This is an important example of the notion of a vector bundle over a manifold.

Definition 5.29. Let ( $N, h$ ) be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold. For a point $p \in M$ we define the normal space $N_{p} M$ of $M$ at $p$ by

$$
N_{p} M=\left\{X \in T_{p} N \mid h_{p}(X, Y)=0 \text { for all } Y \in T_{p} M\right\} .
$$

For all $p \in M$ we have the orthogonal decomposition

$$
T_{p} N=T_{p} M \oplus N_{p} M
$$

The normal bundle of $M$ in $N$ is defined by

$$
N M=\left\{(p, X) \mid p \in M, \quad X \in N_{p} M\right\} .
$$

Theorem 5.30. Let $\left(N^{n}, h\right)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M^{m}$ be a smooth submanifold. Then the normal bundle $(N M, M, \pi)$ is a smooth vector bundle over $M$ of dimension $(n-m)$.

Proof. See Exercise 5.6.
Example 5.31. Let $S^{m}$ be the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ equipped with its standard Euclidean metric $\langle$,$\rangle . If p \in S^{m}$ then the tangent space $T_{p} S^{m}$ of $S^{m}$ at $p$ is

$$
T_{p} S^{m}=\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \mid\langle p, X\rangle=0\right\}
$$

so the normal space $N_{p} S^{m}$ of $S^{m}$ at $p$ satisfies

$$
N_{p} S^{m}=\left\{\lambda p \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{R}\right\} .
$$

This shows that the normal bundle $N S^{m}$ of $S^{m}$ in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ is given by

$$
N S^{m}=\left\{(p, \lambda p) \in \mathbb{R}^{2 m+2} \mid p \in S^{m}, \lambda \in \mathbb{R}\right\} .
$$

We shall now determine the normal bundle $N \mathbf{O}(m)$ of the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ as a submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$.

Example 5.32. The standard Euclidean scalar product, on the real vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$, induces a left-invariant Riemannian metric $g$ on the subset $\mathbf{O}(m)$. This satisfies

$$
g(X, Y)=\operatorname{trace}\left(X^{t} \cdot Y\right)
$$

As we have already seen in Example 3.11 the tangent space $T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)$ of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ at the neutral element $e$ satisfies

$$
T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} \mid X^{t}+X=0\right\} .
$$

This means that the tangent bundle $T \mathbf{O}(m)$ of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is given by

$$
T \mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{(p, p X) \mid p \in \mathbf{O}(m), \quad X \in T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)\right\}
$$

The real vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ has a natural linear decomposition

$$
\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}=\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right) \oplus T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)
$$

where every element $X \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ can be decomposed $X=X^{\top}+X^{\perp}$ in its symmetric and skew-symmetric parts given by

$$
X^{\top}=\frac{1}{2}\left(X-X^{t}\right) \text { and } X^{\perp}=\frac{1}{2}\left(X+X^{t}\right) .
$$

If $X \in T_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)$ and $Y \in \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ then

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(X, Y) & =\operatorname{trace}\left(X^{t} Y\right) \\
& =\operatorname{trace}\left(Y^{t} X\right) \\
& =\operatorname{trace}\left(X Y^{t}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{trace}\left(-X^{t} Y\right) \\
& =-g(X, Y) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that $g(X, Y)=0$ so the normal space $N_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)$ at the neutral element $e$ of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ satisfies

$$
N_{e} \mathbf{O}(m)=\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right) .
$$

This means that in this situation the normal bundle $N \mathbf{O}(m)$ of $\mathbf{O}(m)$ is given by

$$
N \mathbf{O}(m)=\left\{(p, p Y) \mid p \in \mathbf{O}(m), Y \in \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)\right\} .
$$

A Riemannian metric $g$ on a differentiable manifold $M$ can be used to construct families of natural metrics on the tangent bundle $T M$ of $M$. The best known such examples are the Sasaki and Cheeger-Gromoll metrics. For a detailed survey on the geometry of tangent bundles
equipped with these metrics we recommend the paper: S. Gudmundsson, E. Kappos, On the geometry of tangent bundles, Expo. Math. 20 (2002), 1-41.

## Exercises

Exercise 5.1. Let $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $\mathbb{C}^{m}$ be equipped with their standard Euclidean metrics given by

$$
g(z, w)=\operatorname{Re} \sum_{k=1}^{m} z_{k} \bar{w}_{k}
$$

and let

$$
T^{m}=\left\{z \in \mathbb{C}^{m}| | z_{1}\left|=\ldots=\left|z_{m}\right|=1\right\}\right.
$$

be the $m$-dimensional torus in $\mathbb{C}^{m}$ with the induced metric. Let $\phi$ : $\mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T^{m}$ be the standard parametrisation of the $m$-dimensional torus in $\mathbb{C}^{m}$ satisfying $\phi:\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \mapsto\left(e^{i x_{1}}, \ldots, e^{i x_{m}}\right)$. Show that $\phi$ is isometric.

Exercise 5.2. The stereographic projection from the north pole of the $m$-dimensional sphere

$$
\phi:\left(S^{m}-\{(1,0, \ldots, 0)\},\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m+1}}\right) \rightarrow\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}, \frac{4}{\left(1+|x|^{2}\right)^{2}}\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}\right)
$$

is given by

$$
\phi:\left(x_{0}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \mapsto \frac{1}{1-x_{0}}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right)
$$

Show that $\phi$ is an isometry.
Exercise 5.3. Let $B_{1}^{2}(0)$ be the open unit disk in the complex plane equipped with the hyperbolic metric

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{4}{\left(1-|z|^{2}\right)^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{2}}
$$

Equip the upper half plane $\{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid \operatorname{Im}(z)>0\}$ with the Riemannian metric

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im}(z)^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{2}} .
$$

Prove that the holomorphic function $f: B_{1}^{2}(0) \rightarrow\{z \in \mathbb{C} \mid \operatorname{Im}(z)>0\}$ given by

$$
f: z \mapsto \frac{i+z}{1+i z}
$$

is an isometry.
Exercise 5.4. Equip the unitary group $\mathbf{U}(m)$ with the Riemannian metric $g$ given by

$$
g(Z, W)=\operatorname{Re}\left(\operatorname{trace}\left(\bar{Z}^{t} \cdot W\right)\right)
$$

Show that for each $p \in \mathbf{U}(m)$ the left translation $L_{p}: \mathbf{U}(m) \rightarrow \mathbf{U}(m)$ is an isometry.

Exercise 5.5. For the general linear group $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ we have two Riemannian metrics $g$ and $h$ satisfying

$$
g_{p}(p Z, p W)=\operatorname{trace}\left((p Z)^{t} \cdot p W\right), \quad h_{p}(p Z, p W)=\operatorname{trace}\left(Z^{t} \cdot W\right)
$$

Further let $\hat{g}, \hat{h}$ be their induced metrics on the special linear group $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ as a subset of $\mathbf{G L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$.
(i) Which of the metrics $g, h, \hat{g}, \hat{h}$ are left-invariant?
(ii) Determine the normal space $N_{e} \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ of $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ in $\mathbf{G L} \mathbf{L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ with respect to $g$
(iii) Determine the normal bundle $N \mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ of $\mathbf{S L}_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ in $\mathbf{G L} L_{m}(\mathbb{R})$ with respect to $h$.
Exercise 5.6. Find a proof of Theorem 5.30.

## CHAPTER 6

## The Levi-Civita Connection

In this chapter we introduce the Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ on the tangent bundle $T M$ of a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$. This is the most important example of the general notion of a connection on a smooth vector bundle. We deduce an explicit formula for the LeviCivita connection for Lie groups equipped with left-invariant metrics. We also give an example of a connection on the normal bundle of a submanifold of a Riemannian manifold and study its properties.

On the $m$-dimensional real vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ we have the well known differential operator

$$
\partial: C^{\infty}\left(T \mathbb{R}^{m}\right) \times C^{\infty}\left(T \mathbb{R}^{m}\right) \rightarrow C^{\infty}\left(T \mathbb{R}^{m}\right)
$$

mapping a pair of vector fields $X, Y$ on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ to the directional derivative $\partial_{X} Y$ of $Y$ in the direction of $X$ given by

$$
\left(\partial_{X} Y\right)(x)=\lim _{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{Y(x+t X(x))-Y(x)}{t}
$$

The most fundamental properties of the operator $\partial$ are expressed by the following. If $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}, f, g \in C^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ and $X, Y, Z \in C^{\infty}\left(T \mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ then
(i) $\partial_{X}(\lambda \cdot Y+\mu \cdot Z)=\lambda \cdot \partial_{X} Y+\mu \cdot \partial_{X} Z$,
(ii) $\partial_{X}(f \cdot Y)=X(f) \cdot Y+f \cdot \partial_{X} Y$,
(iii) $\partial_{(f \cdot X+g \cdot Y)}=f \cdot \partial_{X} Z+g \cdot \partial_{Y} Z$.

The next result shows that the differential operator $\partial$ is compatible with both the standard differentiable structure on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and its Euclidean metric.

Proposition 6.1. Let the real vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ be equipped with the standard Euclidean metric $\langle$,$\rangle and X, Y, Z \in C^{\infty}\left(T \mathbb{R}^{m}\right)$ be smooth vector fields on $\mathbb{R}^{m}$. Then
(iv) $\partial_{X} Y-\partial_{Y} X=[X, Y]$,
(v) $X(\langle Y, Z\rangle)=\left\langle\partial_{X} Y, Z\right\rangle+\left\langle Y, \partial_{X} Z\right\rangle$.

We shall now generalise the differential operator $\partial$ on the Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ to the so called Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ on a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$. First we introduce the general concept of a connection on a smooth vector bundle.

Definition 6.2. Let $(E, M, \pi)$ be a smooth vector bundle over $M$. A connection on $(E, M, \pi)$ is a map $\hat{\nabla}: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(E) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(E)$ such that
(i) $\hat{\nabla}_{X}(\lambda \cdot v+\mu \cdot w)=\lambda \cdot \hat{\nabla}_{X} v+\mu \cdot \hat{\nabla}_{X} w$,
(ii) $\hat{\nabla}_{X}(f \cdot v)=X(f) \cdot v+f \cdot \hat{\nabla}_{X} v$,
(iii) $\hat{\nabla}_{(f \cdot X+g \cdot Y)^{v}}=f \cdot \hat{\nabla}_{X} v+g \cdot \hat{\nabla}_{Y} v$
for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}, X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M), v, w \in C^{\infty}(E)$ and $f, g \in C^{\infty}(M)$. A section $v \in C^{\infty}(E)$ of the vector bundle $E$ is said to be parallel with respect to the connection $\hat{\nabla}$ if

$$
\hat{\nabla}_{X} v=0
$$

for all vector fields $X \in C^{\infty}(T M)$.
Definition 6.3. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold and $\hat{\nabla}$ be a connection on the tangent bundle ( $T M, M, \pi$ ). Then we define the torsion $T: C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)$ of $\hat{\nabla}$ by

$$
T(X, Y)=\hat{\nabla}_{X} Y-\hat{\nabla}_{Y} X-[X, Y]
$$

where [,] is the Lie bracket on $C^{\infty}(T M)$. The connection $\hat{\nabla}$ is said to be torsion-free if its torsion $T$ vanishes i.e.

$$
[X, Y]=\hat{\nabla}_{X} Y-\hat{\nabla}_{Y} X
$$

for all $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$.
Definition 6.4. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Then a connection $\hat{\nabla}$ on the tangent bundle ( $T M, M, \pi$ ) is said to be metric, or compatible with the Riemannian metric $g$, if

$$
X(g(Y, Z))=g\left(\hat{\nabla}_{X} Y, Z\right)+g\left(Y, \hat{\nabla}_{X} Z\right)
$$

for all $X, Y, Z \in C^{\infty}(T M)$.
Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\nabla$ be a metric and torsion-free connection on its tangent bundle ( $T M, M, \pi$ ). Then it is easily seen that the following equations hold

$$
\begin{array}{r}
g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)=X(g(Y, Z))-g\left(Y, \nabla_{X} Z\right) \\
g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)=g([X, Y], Z)+g\left(\nabla_{Y} X, Z\right)
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
=g([X, Y], Z)+Y(g(X, Z))-g\left(X, \nabla_{Y} Z\right) \\
0=-Z(g(X, Y))+g\left(\nabla_{Z} X, Y\right)+g\left(X, \nabla_{Z} Y\right) \\
=- \\
0-Z(g(X, Y))+g\left(\nabla_{X} Z+[Z, X], Y\right)+g\left(X, \nabla_{Y} Z-[Y, Z]\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

By adding these relations we yield the so called Koszul formula

$$
\begin{aligned}
2 \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)= & \{X(g(Y, Z))+Y(g(Z, X))-Z(g(X, Y)) \\
& +g(Z,[X, Y])+g(Y,[Z, X])-g(X,[Y, Z])\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\left\{E_{1}, \ldots, E_{m}\right\}$ is a local orthonormal frame for the tangent bundle then

$$
\nabla_{X} Y=\sum_{k=1}^{m} g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, E_{i}\right) E_{i}
$$

Hence it is a direct consequence the Koszul formula that there exists at most one metric and torsion-free connection on the tangent bundle $T M$ of $(M, g)$.

Definition 6.5. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold then the map $\nabla: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)$ given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
2 \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)=\quad\{ & X(g(Y, Z))+Y(g(X, Z))-Z(g(X, Y)) \\
& +g([Z, X], Y)+g([Z, Y], X)+g(Z,[X, Y])\}
\end{aligned}
$$

is called the Levi-Civita connection on $M$.
Remark 6.6. It is very important to note that the Levi-Civita connection is an intrinsic object on $(M, g)$ i.e. only depending on the differentiable structure of the manifold and its Riemannian metric.

Proposition 6.7. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Then the Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ is a connection on the tangent bundle TM of $M$.

Proof. It follows from Definition 3.6, Theorem 4.22 and the fact that $g$ is a tensor field that

$$
g\left(\nabla_{X}\left(\lambda \cdot Y_{1}+\mu \cdot Y_{2}\right), Z\right)=\lambda \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} Y_{1}, Z\right)+\mu \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} Y_{2}, Z\right)
$$

and

$$
g\left(\nabla_{Y_{1}}+Y_{2} X, Z\right)=g\left(\nabla_{Y_{1}} X, Z\right)+g\left(\nabla_{Y_{2}} X, Z\right)
$$

for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $X, Y_{1}, Y_{2}, Z \in C^{\infty}(T M)$. Furthermore we have for all $f \in C^{\infty}(M)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2 \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} f Y, Z\right) \\
= & \{X(f \cdot g(Y, Z))+f \cdot Y(g(X, Z))-Z(f \cdot g(X, Y)) \\
& +f \cdot g([Z, X], Y)+g([Z, f \cdot Y], X)+g(Z,[X, f \cdot Y])\}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= & \{X(f) \cdot g(Y, Z)+f \cdot X(g(Y, Z))+f \cdot Y(g(X, Z)) \\
& -Z(f) \cdot g(X, Y)-f \cdot Z(g(X, Y))+f \cdot g([Z, X], Y) \\
& +g(Z(f) \cdot Y+f \cdot[Z, Y], X)+g(Z, X(f) \cdot Y+f \cdot[X, Y])\} \\
= & 2 \cdot\left\{X(f) \cdot g(Y, Z)+f \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)\right\} \\
= & 2 \cdot g\left(X(f) \cdot Y+f \cdot \nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 2 \cdot g\left(\nabla_{f} \cdot X^{Y}, Z\right) \\
= & \{f \cdot X(g(Y, Z))+Y(f \cdot g(X, Z))-Z(f \cdot g(X, Y)) \\
& +g([Z, f \cdot X], Y)+f \cdot g([Z, Y], X)+g(Z,[f \cdot X, Y])\} \\
= & \{f \cdot X(g(Y, Z))+Y(f) \cdot g(X, Z)+f \cdot Y(g(X, Z)) \\
& -Z(f) \cdot g(X, Y)-f \cdot Z(g(X, Y)) \\
& +g(Z(f) \cdot X, Y)+f \cdot g([Z, X], Y) \\
& +f \cdot g([Z, Y], X)+f \cdot g(Z,[X, Y])-g(Z, Y(f) \cdot X)\} \\
= & 2 \cdot f \cdot g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves that $\nabla$ is a connection on the tangent bundle ( $T M, M, \pi$ ).

The next result is called the fundamental theorem of Riemannian geometry.

Theorem 6.8. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Then the Levi-Civita connection is the unique metric and torsion-free connection on the tangent bundle ( $T M, M, \pi$ ).

Proof. The difference $g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)-g\left(\nabla_{Y} X, Z\right)$ equals twice the skew-symmetric part (w.r.t the pair $(X, Y)$ ) of the right hand side of the equation in Definition 6.5. This is implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)-g\left(\nabla_{Y} X, Z\right) & =\frac{1}{2}\{g(Z,[X, Y])-g(Z,[Y, X])\} \\
& =g(Z,[X, Y])
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves that the Levi-Civita connection is torsion-free.
The sum $g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)+g\left(\nabla_{X} Z, Y\right)$ equals twice the symmetric part (w.r.t the pair $(Y, Z)$ ) on the right hand side of Definition 6.5. This yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)+g\left(\nabla_{X} Z, Y\right) & =\frac{1}{2}\{X(g(Y, Z))+X(g(Z, Y))\} \\
& =X(g(Y, Z))
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that the Levi-Civita connection is compatible with the Riemannian metric $g$ on $M$. The stated result now follows from Proposition 6.7.

For later use we introduce the following useful notion.
Definition 6.9. Let $X \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ be a vector field on $(M, g)$. Then the first order covariant derivative

$$
\nabla_{X}: C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

in the direction of X is given by

$$
\nabla_{X}: Y \mapsto \nabla_{X} Y
$$

Definition 6.10. Let $G$ be a Lie group. For a left-invariant vector field $Z \in \mathfrak{g}$ we define the linear map $\operatorname{ad}_{Z}: \mathfrak{g} \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ by

$$
\operatorname{ad}_{Z}: X \mapsto[Z, X]
$$

Proposition 6.11. Let $G$ be one of the classical compact Lie groups, $\mathbf{O}(m), \mathbf{S O}(m), \mathbf{U}(m)$ or $\mathbf{S U}(m)$, equipped with their left-invariant metrics

$$
g(X, Y)=\operatorname{Re}\left(\operatorname{trace}\left(\bar{X}^{t} Y\right)\right) .
$$

Then for each $Z \in \mathfrak{g}$ the operator $\operatorname{ad}_{Z}: \mathfrak{g} \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}$ is skew symmetric.
Proof. See Exercise 6.2.
Proposition 6.12. Let $(G, g)$ be a Lie group equipped with a leftinvariant metric. Then the Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ satisfies

$$
g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left\{g([X, Y], Z)+g\left(\operatorname{ad}_{Z}(X), Y\right)+g\left(X, \operatorname{ad}_{Z}(Y)\right)\right\}
$$

for all $X, Y, Z \in \mathfrak{g}$. In particular, if for all $Z \in \mathfrak{g}$ the map $\operatorname{ad}_{Z}$ is skew symmetric with respect to the metric $g$ then

$$
\nabla_{X} Y=\frac{1}{2}[X, Y]
$$

Proof. See Exercise 6.3.
The next example shows how the Levi-Civita connection can be presented by means local coordinates. Hopefully this will convince the reader that those should be avoided whenever possible.

Example 6.13. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold with LeviCivita connection $\nabla$. Further let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$ and put $X_{i}=\partial / \partial x_{i} \in C^{\infty}(T U)$. Then $\left\{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right\}$ is a local frame of $T M$
on $U$. For $(U, x)$ we define the Christoffel symbols $\Gamma_{i j}^{k}: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of the connection $\nabla$ with respect to $(U, x)$ by

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{m} \Gamma_{i j}^{k} X_{k}=\nabla_{X_{i}} X_{j}
$$

On the subset $x(U)$ of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ we define the Riemannian metric $\tilde{g}$ by

$$
\tilde{g}\left(e_{i}, e_{j}\right)=g_{i j}=g\left(X_{i}, X_{j}\right)
$$

The differential $d x$ is bijective so Proposition 4.27 implies that

$$
d x\left(\left[X_{i}, X_{j}\right]\right)=\left[d x\left(X_{i}\right), d x\left(X_{j}\right)\right]=\left[\partial_{e_{i}}, \partial_{e_{j}}\right]=0
$$

and hence $\left[X_{i}, X_{j}\right]=0$. From the definition of the Levi-Civita connection we now yield

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=1}^{m} g_{k l} \cdot \Gamma_{i j}^{k} & =\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left\langle X_{k}, X_{l}\right\rangle \cdot \Gamma_{i j}^{k} \\
& =\left\langle\sum_{k=1}^{m} \Gamma_{i j}^{k} X_{k}, X_{l}\right\rangle \\
& =\left\langle\nabla_{X_{i}} X_{j}, X_{l}\right\rangle \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left\{X_{i}\left\langle X_{j}, X_{l}\right\rangle+X_{j}\left\langle X_{l}, X_{i}\right\rangle-X_{l}\left\langle X_{i}, X_{j}\right\rangle\right\} \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left\{\frac{\partial g_{j l}}{\partial x_{i}}+\frac{\partial g_{l i}}{\partial x_{j}}-\frac{\partial g_{i j}}{\partial x_{l}}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

If $g^{k l}=\left(g^{-1}\right)_{k l}$ are the components of the the inverse $g^{-1}$ of $g$ then the Christoffel symbols $\Gamma_{i j}^{k}$ satisfy

$$
\Gamma_{i j}^{k}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{l=1}^{m} g^{k l}\left\{\frac{\partial g_{j l}}{\partial x_{i}}+\frac{\partial g_{l i}}{\partial x_{j}}-\frac{\partial g_{i j}}{\partial x_{l}}\right\}
$$

We are now interested in studying the relation between the LeviCivita connection of a Riemannian manifold and that of a submanifold, see Theorem 6.20 . For this we need the following.

Definition 6.14. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold equipped with the induced metric. Further let $\tilde{X} \in$ $C^{\infty}(T M)$ be a vector field on $M$ and $\tilde{Y} \in C^{\infty}(N M)$ be a section of its normal bundle. Let $U$ be an open subset of $N$ such that $U \cap M \neq \emptyset$. Two vector fields $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T U)$ are said to be local extensions of $\tilde{X}$ and $\tilde{Y}$ to $U$ if $\tilde{X}_{p}=X_{p}$ and $\tilde{Y}_{p}=Y_{p}$ for all $p \in U \cap M$. If $U=N$ then $X, Y$ are said to be global extension.

Fact 6.15. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold equipped with the induced metric, $\tilde{X} \in C^{\infty}(T M), \tilde{Y} \in$ $C^{\infty}(N M)$ and $p \in M$. Then there exists an open neighbourhood $U$ of $N$ containing $p$ and $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T U)$ extending $\tilde{X}$ and $\tilde{Y}$ on $U$, respectively.

Remark 6.16. Let ( $N, h$ ) be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold equipped with the induced metric. Let $Z \in C^{\infty}(T N)$ be a vector field on $N$ and $\tilde{Z}=\left.Z\right|_{M}: M \rightarrow T N$ be the restriction of $Z$ to $M$. Note that $\tilde{Z}$ is not necessarily an element of $C^{\infty}(T M)$ i.e. a vector field on the submanifold $M$. For each $p \in M$ the tangent vector $\tilde{Z}_{p} \in T_{p} N$ can be decomposed

$$
\tilde{Z}_{p}=\tilde{Z}_{p}^{\top}+\tilde{Z}_{p}^{\perp}
$$

in a unique way into its tangential part $\left(\tilde{Z}_{p}\right)^{\top} \in T_{p} M$ and its normal $\operatorname{part}\left(\tilde{Z}_{p}\right)^{\perp} \in N_{p} M$. For this we write $\tilde{Z}=\tilde{Z}^{\top}+\tilde{Z}^{\perp}$.

Proposition 6.17. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a smooth submanifold equipped with the induced metric. If $Z \in$ $C^{\infty}(T N)$ is a vector field on $N$ then the sections $\tilde{Z}^{\top}$ of the tangent bundle $T M$ and $\tilde{Z}^{\perp}$ of the normal bundle $N M$ are smooth.

Proof. See Exercise 6.7.
Remark 6.18. Let $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y} \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ be vector fields on $M$ and $p \in M$. Let $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T U)$ extend $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}$ on an open neighbourhood $U$ of $p$ in $N$. It will be shown in Remark 7.3 that $\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)_{p}$ only depends on the value $X_{p}=\tilde{X}_{p}$ and the value of $Y$ along some curve $\gamma:(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \rightarrow$ $N$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=X_{p}=\tilde{X}_{p}$. Since $X_{p} \in T_{p} M$ we may choose the curve $\gamma$ such that the image $\gamma((-\epsilon, \epsilon))$ is contained in $M$. Then $\tilde{Y}_{\gamma(t)}=Y_{\gamma(t)}$ for $t \in(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$. This means that $\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)_{p}$ only depends on $\tilde{X}_{p}$ and the value of $\tilde{Y}$ along $\gamma$, hence independent of the way $\tilde{X}$ and $\tilde{Y}$ are extended.

Definition 6.19. Let ( $N, h$ ) be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold with the induced metric. Then we define the operators

$$
\tilde{\nabla}: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

and

$$
B: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(N M)
$$

by

$$
\tilde{\nabla}_{X} \tilde{Y}=\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)^{\top} \text { and } B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y})=\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)^{\perp}
$$

Here $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T N)$ are any extensions of $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y} \in C^{\infty}(T M)$. The operator $B$ is called the second fundamental form of $M$ in $(N, h)$.

Note that Remark 6.18 shows that the operators $B$ and $\tilde{\nabla}$ are well defined.

Theorem 6.20. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold with the induced metric $g$. Then the operator

$$
\tilde{\nabla}: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

given by

$$
\tilde{\nabla}_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}=\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)^{\top}
$$

is the Levi-Civita connection of the submanifold $(M, g)$.
Proof. See Exercise 6.8.
Proposition 6.21. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold with the induced metric. Then the second fundamental form $B$ of $M$ in $(N, h)$ is symmetric and tensorial in both its arguments.

Proof. See Exercise 6.9.
Definition 6.22. Let ( $N, h$ ) be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold with the induced metric. Then $M$ is said to be minimal if its second fundamental form

$$
B: C^{\infty}(T M) \otimes C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(N M)
$$

is traceless i.e.

$$
\text { trace } B=\sum_{k=1}^{m} B\left(X_{k}, X_{k}\right)=0 .
$$

Here $\left\{X_{1}, X_{2}, \ldots, X_{m}\right\}$ is any local orthonormal frame for the tangent bundle TM.

Example 6.23. Let us now consider the classical situation of a regular surface $\Sigma$ as a submanifold of the three dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{3}$. Let $\{\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}\}$ be a local orthonormal frame for the tangent bundle $T \Sigma$ of $\Sigma$ around a point $p \in \Sigma$ and $\tilde{N}$ be the local Gauss map with $\tilde{N}=\tilde{X} \times \tilde{Y}$. If $X, Y, N$ are local extensions of $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}, \tilde{N}$, such that $\{X, Y, N\}$ is a local orthonormal frame for $T \mathbb{R}^{3}$, then the second fundamental form $B$ of $\Sigma$ in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) & =\left(\partial_{X} Y\right)^{\perp} \\
& =<\partial_{X} Y, N>N \\
& =-<Y, \partial_{X} N>N \\
& =-<Y, d N(X)>N
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=<Y, S_{p}(X)>N,
$$

where $S_{p}: T_{p} \Sigma \rightarrow T_{p} \Sigma$ is the shape operator at $p$. Then the trace of $B$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{trace} B & =\left(<S_{p}(X), X>+<S_{p}(Y), Y>\right) \cdot N \\
& =\operatorname{trace} S_{p} \\
& =\left(k_{1}+k_{2}\right) \cdot N
\end{aligned}
$$

Here $k_{1}$ and $k_{2}$ are the eigenvalues of the symmetric shape operator $S_{p}$ i.e. the principal curvatures at $p$. This shows that the surface $\Sigma$ is a minimal submanifold of $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ if and only if the classical mean curvature $H=\left(k_{1}+k_{2}\right) / 2$ vanishes.

We conclude this chapter by observing that the Levi-Civita connection of a Riemannian ( $N, h$ ) induces a metric connection $\bar{\nabla}$ on the normal bundle $N M$ of its submanifold $M$ as follows.

Proposition 6.24. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold with the induced metric. Let $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T N)$ be vector fields extending $\tilde{X} \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $\tilde{Y} \in C^{\infty}(N M)$, respectively. Then the map

$$
\bar{\nabla}: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(N M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(N M)
$$

given by

$$
\bar{\nabla}_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}=\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)^{\perp}
$$

is a well defined connection on the normal bundle NM satisfying

$$
\tilde{X}(h(\tilde{Y}, \tilde{Z}))=h\left(\bar{\nabla}_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, \tilde{Z}\right)+h\left(\tilde{Y}, \bar{\nabla}_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Z}\right)
$$

for all $\tilde{X} \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $\tilde{Y}, \tilde{Z} \in C^{\infty}(N M)$.
Proof. See Exercise 6.10.

## Exercises

Exercise 6.1. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold and $\hat{\nabla}$ be a connection on the tangent bundle $(T M, M, \pi)$. Prove that the torsion $T: C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)$ of $\hat{\nabla}$ is a tensor field of type $(2,1)$.

Exercise 6.2. Find a proof of Proposition 6.11.
Exercise 6.3. Find a proof of Proposition 6.12.
Exercise 6.4. Let Sol be the 3 -dimensional subgroup of $\mathbf{S L}_{3}(\mathbb{R})$ given by

$$
\mathrm{Sol}=\left\{\left.\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{z} & 0 & x \\
0 & e^{-z} & y \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right) \right\rvert\, p=(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^{3}\right\} .
$$

Let $X, Y, Z \in \mathfrak{g}$ be left-invariant vector fields on Sol such that

$$
X_{e}=\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right|_{p=0}, \quad Y_{e}=\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial y}\right|_{p=0} \quad \text { and } \quad Z_{e}=\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right|_{p=0} .
$$

Show that

$$
[X, Y]=0, \quad[Z, X]=X \quad \text { and }[Z, Y]=-Y
$$

Let $g$ be the left-invariant Riemannian metric on $G$ such that $\{X, Y, Z\}$ is an orthonormal basis for the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$. Calculate the vector fields

$$
\nabla_{X} Y, \quad \nabla_{Y} X, \quad \nabla_{X} Z, \quad \nabla_{Z} X, \quad \nabla_{Y} Z \text { and } \nabla_{Z} Y
$$

Exercise 6.5. Let $\mathbf{S O}(m)$ be the special orthogonal group equipped with the metric

$$
\langle X, Y\rangle=\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{trace}\left(X^{t} Y\right)
$$

Prove that $\langle$,$\rangle is left-invariant and that for left-invariant vector fields$ $X, Y \in \mathfrak{s o}(m)$ we have

$$
\nabla_{X} Y=\frac{1}{2}[X, Y]
$$

Let $A, B, C$ be elements of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{s o ( 3 )}$ with

$$
A_{e}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & -1 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right), B_{e}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right), C_{e}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -1 \\
0 & 1 & 0
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Prove that $\{A, B, C\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathfrak{s o}(3)$ and calculate

$$
\nabla_{A} B, \quad \nabla_{B} C \text { and } \nabla_{C} A
$$

Exercise 6.6. Let $\mathbf{S L}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ be the real special linear group equipped with the metric

$$
\langle X, Y\rangle_{p}=\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{trace}\left(\left(p^{-1} X\right)^{t}\left(p^{-1} Y\right)\right)
$$

Let $A, B, C$ be elements of the Lie algebra $\mathfrak{s l}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ with

$$
A_{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & -1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right), \quad B_{e}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 0 \\
0 & -1
\end{array}\right), \quad C_{e}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Prove that $\{A, B, C\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathfrak{s l}_{2}(\mathbb{R})$ and calculate

$$
\nabla_{A} B, \quad \nabla_{B} C \text { and } \nabla_{C} A .
$$

Exercise 6.7. Find a proof of Proposition 6.17.
Exercise 6.8. Find a proof of Theorem 6.20.
Exercise 6.9. Find a proof of Proposition 6.21.
Exercise 6.10. Find a proof of Proposition 6.24.

## CHAPTER 7

## Geodesics

In this chapter we introduce the notion of a geodesic on a Riemannian manifold. This is a solution to a second order non-linear system of ordinary differential equations. We show that geodesics are solutions to two different variational problems. They are critical points to the so called energy functional and furthermore locally the shortest paths between their endpoints.

Definition 7.1. Let $M$ be a smooth manifold and $(T M, M, \pi)$ be its tangent bundle. A vector field $X$ along a curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ is a curve $X: I \rightarrow T M$ such that $\pi \circ X=\gamma$. By $C_{\gamma}^{\infty}(T M)$ we denote the set of all smooth vector fields along $\gamma$. For $X, Y \in C_{\gamma}^{\infty}(T M)$ and $f \in C^{\infty}(I)$ we define the addition + and the multiplication $\cdot$ by
(i) $(X+Y)(t)=X(t)+Y(t)$,
(ii) $(f \cdot X)(t)=f(t) \cdot X(t)$.

This turns $\left(C_{\gamma}^{\infty}(T M),+, \cdot\right)$ into a module over $C^{\infty}(I)$ and a real vector space over the constant functions in particular. For a given smooth curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ in $M$ the smooth vector field $X: I \rightarrow T M$ with $X: t \mapsto(\gamma(t), \dot{\gamma}(t))$ is called the tangent field along $\gamma$.

The next result gives a rule for differentiating a vector field along a given curve and shows how this is related to the Levi-Civita connection.

Proposition 7.2. Let $(M, g)$ be a smooth Riemannian manifold and $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a curve in $M$. Then there exists a unique operator

$$
\frac{D}{d t}: C_{\gamma}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{\gamma}^{\infty}(T M)
$$

such that for all $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f \in C^{\infty}(I)$,
(i) $D(\lambda \cdot X+\mu \cdot Y) / d t=\lambda \cdot(D X / d t)+\mu \cdot(D Y / d t)$,
(ii) $D(f \cdot Y) / d t=d f / d t \cdot Y+f \cdot(D Y / d t)$, and
(iii) for each $t_{0} \in I$ there exists an open subinterval $J_{0}$ of I such that $t_{0} \in J_{0}$ and if $X \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ is a vector field with $X_{\gamma(t)}=Y(t)$ for all $t \in J_{0}$ then

$$
\left(\frac{D Y}{d t}\right)\left(t_{0}\right)=\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X\right)_{\gamma\left(t_{0}\right)}
$$

Proof. Let us first prove the uniqueness, so for the moment we assume that such an operator exists. For a point $t_{0} \in I$ choose a chart $(U, x)$ on $M$ and open subinterval $J \subset I$ such that $t_{0} \in J, \gamma(J) \subset U$ and put $X_{i}=\partial / \partial x_{i} \in C^{\infty}(T U)$. Then any vector field $Y$ along the restriction of $\gamma$ to $J$ can be written in the form

$$
Y(t)=\sum_{j=1}^{m} \alpha_{j}(t)\left(X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}
$$

for some functions $\alpha_{j} \in C^{\infty}(J)$. The second condition means that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{D Y}{d t}\right)(t)=\sum_{j=1}^{m} \alpha_{j}(t)\left(\frac{D X_{j}}{d t}\right)_{\gamma(t)}+\sum_{k=1}^{m} \dot{\alpha}_{k}(t)\left(X_{k}\right)_{\gamma(t)} . \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $x \circ \gamma(t)=\left(\gamma_{1}(t), \ldots, \gamma_{m}(t)\right)$ then

$$
\dot{\gamma}(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t)\left(X_{i}\right)_{\gamma(t)}
$$

and the third condition for $D / d t$ implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{D X_{j}}{d t}\right)_{\gamma(t)}=\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t)\left(\nabla_{X_{i}} X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)} . \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Together equations (1) and (2) give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{D Y}{d t}\right)(t)=\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left(\dot{\alpha}_{k}(t)+\sum_{i, j=1}^{m} \Gamma_{i j}^{k}(\gamma(t)) \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t) \alpha_{j}(t)\right)\left(X_{k}\right)_{\gamma(t)} . \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This shows that the operator $D / d t$ is uniquely determined.
It is easily seen that if we use equation (3) for defining an operator $D / d t$ then it satisfies the necessary conditions of Proposition 7.2. This proves the existence of the operator $D / d t$.

Remark 7.3. It follows from the fact that the Levi-Civita connection is tensorial in its first argument i.e.

$$
\nabla_{f} \cdot Z^{X}=f \cdot \nabla_{Z} X
$$

and the equation

$$
\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X\right)_{\gamma\left(t_{0}\right)}=\left(\frac{D Y}{d t}\right)\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

in Proposition 7.2 that the value $\left(\nabla_{Z} X\right)_{p}$ of $\nabla_{Z} X$ at $p$ only depends on the value of $Z_{p}$ of $Z$ at $p$ and the values of $Y$ along some curve $\gamma$ satisfying $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=Z_{p}$. This allows us to use the notation $\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} Y$ for $D Y / d t$.

The Levi-Civita connection can now be used to define the notions of parallel vector fields and geodesics on Riemannian manifolds. We will show that they are solutions to ordinary differential equations.

Definition 7.4. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\gamma: I \rightarrow$ $M$ be a $C^{1}$-curve. A vector field $X$ along $\gamma$ is said to be parallel if

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X=0 .
$$

A $C^{2}$-curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ on $M$ is said to be a geodesic if its tangent field $\dot{\gamma}$ is parallel along $\gamma$ i.e.

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=0 .
$$

The next result shows that for given initial values at a point $p \in M$ we get a parallel vector field globally defined along any curve through that point.

Theorem 7.5. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $I=(a, b)$ be an open interval on the real line $\mathbb{R}$. Further let $\gamma:[a, b] \rightarrow M$ be a continuous curve which is $C^{1}$ on $I, t_{0} \in I$ and $X_{0} \in T_{\gamma\left(t_{0}\right)} M$. Then there exists a unique parallel vector field $Y$ along $\gamma$ such that $X_{0}=Y\left(t_{0}\right)$.

Proof. Let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$ such that $\gamma\left(t_{0}\right) \in U$ and put $X_{i}=\partial / \partial x_{i} \in C^{\infty}(T U)$. Let $J$ be an open subset of $I$ such that the image $\gamma(J)$ is contained in $U$. Then the tangent of the restriction of $\gamma$ to $J$ can be written as

$$
\dot{\gamma}(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t)\left(X_{i}\right)_{\gamma(t)} .
$$

Similarly, let $Y$ be a vector field along $\gamma$ represented by

$$
Y(t)=\sum_{j=1}^{m} \alpha_{j}(t)\left(X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)} .
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} Y\right)(t) & =\sum_{j=1}^{m}\left\{\dot{\alpha}_{j}(t)\left(X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}+\alpha_{j}(t)\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}\right\} \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left\{\dot{\alpha}_{k}(t)+\sum_{i, j=1}^{m} \alpha_{j}(t) \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t) \Gamma_{i j}^{k}(\gamma(t))\right\}\left(X_{k}\right)_{\gamma(t)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies that the vector field $Y$ is parallel i.e. $\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} Y \equiv 0$ if and only if the following first order linear system of ordinary differential
equations is satisfied

$$
\dot{\alpha}_{k}(t)+\sum_{i, j=1}^{m} \alpha_{j}(t) \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t) \Gamma_{i j}^{k}(\gamma(t))=0
$$

for all $k=1, \ldots, m$. It follows from Fact 7.6 that to each initial value $\alpha\left(t_{0}\right)=\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ with

$$
Y_{0}=\sum_{k=1}^{m} v_{k}\left(X_{k}\right)_{\gamma\left(t_{0}\right)}
$$

there exists a unique solution $\alpha=\left(\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{m}\right)$ to the above system. This gives us the unique parallel vector field $Y$

$$
Y(t)=\sum_{k=1}^{m} \alpha_{k}(t)\left(X_{k}\right)_{\gamma(t)}
$$

along $J$. Since the Christoffel symbols are bounded along the compact set $[a, b]$ it is clear that the parallel vector field can be extended to the whole of $I=(a, b)$.

The following result is the well-known theorem of Picard-Lindelöf.
Fact 7.6. Let $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be a continuous map defined on an open subset $U$ of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n}$ and $L \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$such that

$$
\left|f\left(t, y_{1}\right)-f\left(t, y_{2}\right)\right| \leq L \cdot\left|y_{1}-y_{2}\right|
$$

for all $\left(t, y_{1}\right),\left(t, y_{2}\right) \in U$. If $\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right) \in U$ then there exists a unique local solution $x: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ to the following initial value problem

$$
x^{\prime}(t)=f(t, x(t)), \quad x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0} .
$$

Lemma 7.7. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a $C^{1}$-curve and $X, Y$ be parallel vector fields along $\gamma$. Then the function $g(X, Y): I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $t \mapsto g_{\gamma(t)}\left(X_{\gamma(t)}, Y_{\gamma(t)}\right)$ is constant. In particular, if $\gamma$ is a geodesic then $g(\dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma})$ is constant along $\gamma$.

Proof. Using the fact that the Levi-Civita connection is metric we obtain

$$
\frac{d}{d t}(g(X, Y))=g\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} X, Y\right)+g\left(X, \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} Y\right)=0
$$

This proves that the function $g(X, Y)$ is constant along $\gamma$.
The following result on parallel vector fields is a useful tool in Riemannian geometry. We will apply it in Chapter 9.

Proposition 7.8. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$ and $\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{m}\right\}$ be an orthonormal basis for the tangent space $T_{p} M$. Let $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a $C^{1}$-curve such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ be parallel vector fields along $\gamma$ such that $X_{k}(0)=v_{k}$ for $k=1,2, \ldots, m$. Then the set $\left\{X_{1}(t), \ldots, X_{m}(t)\right\}$ is a orthonormal basis for the tangent space $T_{\gamma(t)} M$ for all $t \in I$.

Proof. This is a direct consequence of Lemma 7.7.
Geodesics are of great importance in Riemannian geometry. For those we have the following fundamental existence and uniqueness result.

Theorem 7.9. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. If $p \in M$ and $v \in T_{p} M$ then there exists an open interval $I=(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$ and $a$ unique geodesic $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$.

Proof. Let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$ such that $p \in U$ and put $X_{i}=\partial / \partial x_{i} \in C^{\infty}(T U)$. Let $J$ be an open subset of $I$ such that the image $\gamma(J)$ is contained in $U$. Then the tangent of the restriction of $\gamma$ to $J$ can be written as

$$
\dot{\gamma}(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t)\left(X_{i}\right)_{\gamma(t)} .
$$

By differentiation we then obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}}^{\dot{\gamma}} & =\sum_{j=1}^{m} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}}\left(\dot{\gamma}_{j}(t)\left(X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}\right) \\
& =\sum_{j=1}^{m}\left\{\ddot{\gamma}_{j}(t)\left(X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}+\sum_{i=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t) \dot{\gamma}_{j}(t)\left(\nabla_{X_{i}} X_{j}\right)_{\gamma(t)}\right\} \\
& =\sum_{k=1}^{m}\left\{\ddot{\gamma}_{k}(t)+\sum_{i, j=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t) \dot{\gamma}_{j}(t) \Gamma_{i j}^{k}(\gamma(t))\right\}\left(X_{k}\right)_{\gamma(t)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence the curve $\gamma$ is a geodesic if and only if

$$
\ddot{\gamma}_{k}(t)+\sum_{i, j=1}^{m} \dot{\gamma}_{i}(t) \dot{\gamma}_{j}(t) \Gamma_{i j}^{k}(\gamma(t))=0
$$

for all $k=1, \ldots, m$. It follows from Fact 7.10 that for initial values $q=x(p)$ and $w=(d x)_{p}(v)$ there exists an open interval $(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$ and a unique solution $\left(\gamma_{1}, \ldots, \gamma_{m}\right)$ satisfying the initial conditions

$$
\left(\gamma_{1}(0), \ldots, \gamma_{m}(0)\right)=q \text { and }\left(\dot{\gamma}_{1}(0), \ldots, \dot{\gamma}_{m}(0)\right)=w
$$

The following result is a second order consequence of the well-known theorem of Picard-Lindelöf.

Fact 7.10. Let $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ be a continuous map defined on an open subset $U$ of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{2 n}$ and $L \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$such that

$$
\left|f\left(t, y_{1}\right)-f\left(t, y_{2}\right)\right| \leq L \cdot\left|y_{1}-y_{2}\right|
$$

for all $\left(t, y_{1}\right),\left(t, y_{2}\right) \in U$. If $\left(t_{0},\left(x_{0}, x_{1}\right)\right) \in U$ and $x_{0}, x_{1} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ then there exists a unique local solution $x: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n}$ to the following initial value problem

$$
x^{\prime \prime}(t)=f\left(t, x(t), x^{\prime}(t)\right), \quad x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}, \quad x^{\prime}\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{1} .
$$

Remark 7.11. The Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ on a given Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ is an inner object i.e. completely determined by the differentiable structure on $M$ and the Riemannian metric $g$, see Remark 6.6. Hence the same applies for the condition

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=0
$$

for a given curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$. This means that the image of a geodesic under a local isometry is again a geodesic.

Example 7.12. Let $E^{m}=\left(\mathbb{R}^{m},\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}\right)$ be the Euclidean space. For the trivial chart $\operatorname{id}_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ the metric on $E^{m}$ is given by $g_{i j}=\delta_{i j}$. As a direct consequence of Example 6.13 we see that

$$
\Gamma_{i j}^{k}=0 \text { for all } i, j, k=1, \ldots, m
$$

Hence $\gamma: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a geodesic if and only if $\ddot{\gamma}(t)=0$. For $p \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $v \in T_{p} \mathbb{R}^{m} \cong \mathbb{R}^{m}$ define

$$
\gamma_{(p, v)}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m} \text { by } \gamma_{(p, v)}(t)=p+t \cdot v .
$$

Then $\gamma_{(p, v)}(0)=p, \dot{\gamma}_{(p, v)}(0)=v$ and $\ddot{\gamma}_{(p, v)}=0$. It now follows from Theorem 7.9 that the geodesics in $E^{m}$ are the straight lines.

Example 7.13. Let us now consider the classical situation of a regular surface $\Sigma$ as a submanifold of the three dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^{3}$. If $\gamma: I \rightarrow \Sigma$ is a $C^{2}$-curve, then Theorem 6.20 tells us that

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=\left(\partial_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)^{\top}=\ddot{\gamma}^{\top} .
$$

This means that $\gamma$ is a geodesic if and only if the tangential part $\ddot{\gamma}^{\top}$ of the second derivative $\ddot{\gamma}$ vanishes.

Definition 7.14. A geodesic $\gamma: I \rightarrow(M, g)$ in a Riemannian manifold is said to be maximal if it cannot be extended to a geodesic defined on an interval $J$ strictly containing $I$. The manifold $(M, g)$ is said to be complete if for each point $(p, v) \in T M$ there exists a
geodesic $\gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow M$ defined on the whole of $\mathbb{R}$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$.

Proposition 7.15. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold with LeviCivita connection $\nabla$ and $M$ be a submanifold equipped with the induced metric $g$. A curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ is a geodesic in $M$ if and only if

$$
\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)^{\top}=0 .
$$

Proof. Following Theorem 6.20 the Levi-Civita connection $\tilde{\nabla}$ on $(M, g)$ satisfies

$$
\tilde{\nabla}_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}^{\top} .\right.
$$

Example 7.16. Let $E^{m+1}$ be the $(m+1)$-dimensional Euclidean space and $S^{m}$ be the unit sphere in $E^{m+1}$ with the induced metric. At a point $p \in S^{m}$ the normal space $N_{p} S^{m}$ of $S^{m}$ in $E^{m+1}$ is simply the line generated by $p$. If $\gamma: I \rightarrow S^{m}$ is a $C^{2}$-curve on the sphere, then

$$
\tilde{\nabla}_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)^{\top}=\left(\partial_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)^{\top}=\ddot{\gamma}^{\top}=\ddot{\gamma}-\ddot{\gamma}^{\perp}=\ddot{\gamma}-\langle\ddot{\gamma}, \gamma\rangle \gamma .
$$

This shows that $\gamma$ is a geodesic on the sphere $S^{m}$ if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{\gamma}=\langle\ddot{\gamma}, \gamma\rangle \gamma . \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a point $(p, X) \in T S^{m}$ define the curve $\gamma=\gamma_{(p, X)}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{m}$ by

$$
\gamma: t \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{cl}
p & \text { if } X=0 \\
\cos (|X| t) \cdot p+\sin (|X| t) \cdot X /|X| & \text { if } X \neq 0
\end{array}\right.
$$

Then one easily checks that $\gamma(0)=p, \dot{\gamma}(0)=X$ and that $\gamma$ satisfies the geodesic equation (4). This shows that the non-constant geodesics on $S^{m}$ are precisely the great circles and the sphere is complete.

Example 7.17. Let $\operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ be equipped with the metric

$$
\langle A, B\rangle=\frac{1}{8} \operatorname{trace}\left(A^{t} B\right)
$$

Then we know that the map $\phi: S^{m} \rightarrow \operatorname{Sym}\left(\mathbb{R}^{m+1}\right)$ with

$$
\phi: p \mapsto\left(2 p p^{t}-e\right)
$$

is an isometric immersion and that the image $\phi\left(S^{m}\right)$ is isometric to the $m$-dimensional real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$. This means that the geodesics on $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$ are exactly the images of geodesics on $S^{m}$. This shows that the real projective spaces are complete.

Definition 7.18. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\gamma$ : $I \rightarrow M$ be a $C^{r}$-curve on $M$. A variation of $\gamma$ is a $C^{r}$-map

$$
\Phi:(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \times I \rightarrow M
$$

such that for all $s \in I, \Phi_{0}(s)=\Phi(0, s)=\gamma(s)$. If the interval is compact i.e. of the form $I=[a, b]$, then the variation $\Phi$ is called proper if for all $t \in(-\epsilon, \epsilon), \Phi_{t}(a)=\gamma(a)$ and $\Phi_{t}(b)=\gamma(b)$.

Definition 7.19. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\gamma$ : $I \rightarrow M$ be a $C^{2}$-curve on $M$. For every compact interval $[a, b] \subset I$ we define the energy functional $E_{[a, b]}$ by

$$
E_{[a, b]}(\gamma)=\frac{1}{2} \int_{a}^{b} g(\dot{\gamma}(t), \dot{\gamma}(t)) d t
$$

A $C^{2}$-curve $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ is called a critical point for the energy functional if every proper variation $\Phi$ of $\left.\gamma\right|_{[a, b]}$ satisfies

$$
\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(E_{[a, b]}\left(\Phi_{t}\right)\right)\right|_{t=0}=0
$$

We shall now prove that geodesics can be characterised as the critical points of the energy functional.

Theorem 7.20. A $C^{2}$-curve $\gamma: I=[a, b] \rightarrow M$ is a critical point for the energy functional if and only if it is a geodesic.

Proof. For a $C^{2}$-map $\Phi:(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \times I \rightarrow M, \Phi:(t, s) \mapsto \Phi(t, s)$ we define the vector fields $X=d \Phi(\partial / \partial s)$ and $Y=d \Phi(\partial / \partial t)$ along $\Phi$. The following shows that the vector fields $X$ and $Y$ commute.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla_{X} Y-\nabla_{Y} X & =[X, Y] \\
& =[d \Phi(\partial / \partial s), d \Phi(\partial / \partial t)] \\
& =d \Phi([\partial / \partial s, \partial / \partial t]) \\
& =0
\end{aligned}
$$

since $[\partial / \partial s, \partial / \partial t]=0$. We now assume that $\Phi$ is a proper variation of $\gamma$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(E_{[a, b]}\left(\Phi_{t}\right)\right) & =\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t}\left(\int_{a}^{b} g(X, X) d s\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \int_{a}^{b} \frac{d}{d t}(g(X, X)) d s \\
& =\int_{a}^{b} g\left(\nabla_{Y} X, X\right) d s
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\int_{a}^{b} g\left(\nabla_{X} Y, X\right) d s \\
& =\int_{a}^{b}\left(\frac{d}{d s}(g(Y, X))-g\left(Y, \nabla_{X} X\right)\right) d s \\
& =[g(Y, X)]_{a}^{b}-\int_{a}^{b} g\left(Y, \nabla_{X} X\right) d s .
\end{aligned}
$$

The variation is proper, so $Y(t, a)=Y(t, b)=0$. Furthermore $X(0, s)=$ $\partial \Phi / \partial s(0, s)=\dot{\gamma}(s)$, so

$$
\left.\frac{d}{d t}\left(E_{[a, b]}\left(\Phi_{t}\right)\right)\right|_{t=0}=-\int_{a}^{b} g\left(Y(0, s),\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)(s)\right) d s
$$

The last integral vanishes for every proper variation $\Phi$ of $\gamma$ if and only if $\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=0$.

A geodesic $\gamma: I \rightarrow(M, g)$ is a special case of what is called a harmonic map $\phi:(M, g) \rightarrow(N, h)$ between Riemannian manifolds. Other examples are conformal immersions $\psi:\left(M^{2}, g\right) \rightarrow(N, h)$ which parametrise the so called minimal surfaces in $(N, h)$. For a reference on harmonic maps see H. Urakawa, Calculus of Variations and Harmonic Maps, Translations of Mathematical Monographs 132, AMS (1993).

Let $\left(M^{m}, g\right)$ be an $m$-dimensional Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$ and

$$
S_{p}^{m-1}=\left\{v \in T_{p} M \mid g_{p}(v, v)=1\right\}
$$

be the unit sphere in the tangent space $T_{p} M$ at $p$. Then every point $w \in T_{p} M \backslash\{0\}$ can be written as $w=r_{w} \cdot v_{w}$, where $r_{w}=|w|$ and $v_{w}=w /|w| \in S_{p}^{m-1}$. For $v \in S_{p}^{m-1}$ let $\gamma_{v}:\left(-\alpha_{v}, \beta_{v}\right) \rightarrow M$ be the maximal geodesic such that $\alpha_{v}, \beta_{v} \in \mathbb{R}^{+} \cup\{\infty\}, \gamma_{v}(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}_{v}(0)=v$. It can be shown that the real number

$$
\epsilon_{p}=\inf \left\{\alpha_{v}, \beta_{v} \mid v \in S_{p}^{m-1}\right\}
$$

is positive so the open ball

$$
B_{\epsilon_{p}}^{m}(0)=\left\{v \in T_{p} M \mid g_{p}(v, v)<\epsilon_{p}^{2}\right\}
$$

is non-empty. The exponential map $\exp _{p}: B_{\epsilon_{p}}^{m}(0) \rightarrow M$ at $p$ is defined by

$$
\exp _{p}: w \mapsto\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
p & \text { if } w=0 \\
\gamma_{v_{w}}\left(r_{w}\right) & \text { if } w \neq 0
\end{array}\right.
$$

Note that for $v \in S_{p}^{m-1}$ the line segment $\lambda_{v}:\left(-\epsilon_{p}, \epsilon_{p}\right) \rightarrow T_{p} M$ with $\lambda_{v}: t \mapsto t \cdot v$ is mapped onto the geodesic $\gamma_{v}$ i.e. locally we have
$\gamma_{v}=\exp _{p} \circ \lambda_{v}$. One can prove that the map $\exp _{p}$ is smooth and it follows from its definition that the differential

$$
d\left(\exp _{p}\right)_{0}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{p} M
$$

is the identity map for the tangent space $T_{p} M$. Then the inverse mapping theorem tells us that there exists an $r_{p} \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$such that if $U_{p}=B_{r_{p}}^{m}(0)$ and $V_{p}=\exp _{p}\left(U_{p}\right)$ then $\left.\exp _{p}\right|_{U_{p}}: U_{p} \rightarrow V_{p}$ is a diffeomorphism parametrising the open subset $V_{p}$ of $M$.

The next result shows that the geodesics are locally the shortest paths between their endpoints.

Theorem 7.21. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Then the geodesics are locally the shortest paths between their end points.

Proof. Let $p \in M, U=B_{r}^{m}(0)$ in $T_{p} M$ and $V=\exp _{p}(U)$ be such that the restriction

$$
\phi=\left.\exp _{p}\right|_{U}: U \rightarrow V
$$

of the exponential map at $p$ is a diffeomorphism. We define a metric $\tilde{g}$ on $U$ such that for each $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T U)$ we have

$$
\tilde{g}(X, Y)=g(d \phi(X), d \phi(Y)) .
$$

This turns $\phi:(U, \tilde{g}) \rightarrow(V, g)$ into an isometry. It then follows from the construction of the exponential map, that the geodesics in $(U, \tilde{g})$ through the point $0=\phi^{-1}(p)$ are exactly the lines $\lambda_{v}: t \mapsto t \cdot v$ where $v \in T_{p} M$.

Now let $q \in B_{r}^{m}(0) \backslash\{0\}$ and $\lambda_{q}:[0,1] \rightarrow B_{r}^{m}(0)$ be the curve $\lambda_{q}: t \mapsto t \cdot q$. Further let $\sigma:[0,1] \rightarrow U$ be any $C^{1}$-curve such that $\sigma(0)=0$ and $\sigma(1)=q$. Along the curve $\sigma$ we define the vector field $X$ with $X: t \mapsto \sigma(t)$ and the tangent field $\dot{\sigma}: t \rightarrow \dot{\sigma}(t)$ to $\sigma$. Then the radial component $\dot{\sigma}_{\text {rad }}$ of $\dot{\sigma}$ is the orthogonal projection of $\dot{\sigma}$ onto the line generated by $X$ i.e.

$$
\dot{\sigma}_{\mathrm{rad}}: t \mapsto \frac{\tilde{g}(\dot{\sigma}(t), X(t))}{\tilde{g}(X(t), X(t))} X(t) .
$$

Then it is easily checked that

$$
\left|\dot{\sigma}_{\mathrm{rad}}(t)\right|=\frac{|\tilde{g}(\dot{\sigma}(t), X(t))|}{|X(t)|}
$$

and

$$
\frac{d}{d t}|X(t)|=\frac{d}{d t} \sqrt{\tilde{g}(X(t), X(t))}=\frac{\tilde{g}(\dot{\sigma}(t), X(t))}{|X(t)|} .
$$

Combining these two relations we yield

$$
\left|\dot{\sigma}_{\mathrm{rad}}(t)\right| \geq \frac{d}{d t}|X(t)|
$$

This means that

$$
\begin{aligned}
L(\sigma) & =\int_{0}^{1}|\dot{\sigma}(t)| d t \\
& \geq \int_{0}^{1}\left|\dot{\sigma}_{\mathrm{rad}}(t)\right| d t \\
& \geq \int_{0}^{1} \frac{d}{d t}|X(t)| d t \\
& =|X(1)|-|X(0)| \\
& =|q| \\
& =L\left(\lambda_{q}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This proves that in fact $\gamma$ is the shortest path connecting $p$ and $q$.
Definition 7.22. Let ( $N, h$ ) be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold with the induced metric. Then the mean curvature vector field of $M$ in $N$ is the smooth section $H: M \rightarrow N M$ of the normal bundle $N M$ given by

$$
H=\frac{1}{m} \operatorname{trace} B=\frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^{m} B\left(X_{k}, X_{k}\right) .
$$

Here $B$ is the second fundamental form of $M$ in $N$ and $\left\{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right\}$ is any local orthonormal frame for the tangent bundle $T M$ of $M$. The submanifold $M$ is said to be minimal in $N$ if $H \equiv 0$ and totally geodesic in $N$ if $B \equiv 0$.

Proposition 7.23. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold equipped with the induced metric. Then the following conditions are equivalent
(i) $M$ is totally geodesic in $N$
(ii) if $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ is a curve, then the following conditions are equivalent
(a) $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ is a geodesic in $M$,
(b) $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ is a geodesic in $N$.

Proof. The result is a direct consequence of the decomposition formula

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}=\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)^{\top}+\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}\right)^{\perp}=\tilde{\nabla}_{\dot{\gamma}} \dot{\gamma}+B(\dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma})
$$

and the polar identity for the symmetric second fundamental form

$$
4 \cdot B(X, Y)=B(X+Y, X+Y)-B(X-Y, X-Y)
$$

Proposition 7.24. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a complete submanifold of $N$. For a point $(p, v)$ of the tangent bundle TM let $\gamma_{(p, v)}: I \rightarrow N$ be the maximal geodesic in $N$ with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$. Then $M$ is totally geodesic in $(N, h)$ if and only if $\gamma_{(p, v)}(I) \subset M$ for all $(p, v) \in T M$.

Proof. See Exercise 7.4.
Corollary 7.25. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $p \in N$ and $V$ be an m-dimensional linear subspace of the tangent space $T_{p} N$ of $N$ at $p$. Then there exists (locally) at most one totally geodesic submanifold $M$ of $(N, h)$ such that $T_{p} M=V$.

## Proof. See Exercise 7.5.

Proposition 7.26. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold of $N$ which is the fixpoint set of an isometry $\phi: N \rightarrow N$. Then $M$ is totally geodesic in $N$.

Proof. Let $p \in M, v \in T_{p} M$ and $c: J \rightarrow M$ be a curve such that $c(0)=p$ and $\dot{c}(0)=v$. Since $M$ is the fix point set of $\phi$ we have $\phi(p)=p$ and $d \phi_{p}(v)=v$. Further let $\gamma: I \rightarrow N$ be the maximal geodesic in $N$ with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$. The map $\phi: N \rightarrow N$ is an isometry so the curve $\phi \circ \gamma: I \rightarrow N$ is also a geodesic. The uniqueness result of Theorem 7.9, $\phi(\gamma(0))=\gamma(0)$ and $d \phi(\dot{\gamma}(0))=\dot{\gamma}(0)$ then imply that $\phi(\gamma)=\gamma$. Hence the image of the geodesic $\gamma: I \rightarrow N$ is contained in $M$, so following Proposition 7.24 the submanifold $M$ is totally geodesic in $N$.

Corollary 7.27. Let $m<n$ be positive integers. Then the $m$ dimensional sphere

$$
S^{m}=\left\{(x, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \times\left.\mathbb{R}^{n-m}| | x\right|^{2}=1\right\}
$$

is a totally geodesic submanifold of

$$
S^{n}=\left\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \times\left.\mathbb{R}^{n-m}| | x\right|^{2}+|y|^{2}=1\right\} .
$$

Proof. The statement is a direct consequence of the fact that $S^{m}$ is the fixpoint set of the isometry $\phi: S^{n} \rightarrow S^{n}$ of $S^{n}$ with $(x, y) \mapsto$ $(x,-y)$.

Corollary 7.28. Let $m<n$ be positive integers. Let $H^{n}$ be the $n$ dimensional hyperbolic space modelled on the upper half space $\mathbb{R}^{+} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$ equipped with the Riemannian metric

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{1}{x_{1}^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{n}}
$$

where $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in H^{n}$. Then the $m$-dimensional hyperbolic space

$$
H^{m}=\left\{(x, 0) \in H^{n} \mid x \in \mathbb{R}^{m}\right\}
$$

is totally geodesic in $H^{n}$.
Proof. See Exercise 7.7.
Definition 7.29. A symmetric space is a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ such that for each point $p \in M$ there exists a global isometry $\phi_{p}: M \rightarrow M$ which is a geodesic symmetry fixing $p$. By this we mean that $\phi_{p}(p)=p$ and the tangent map $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{p} M$ satisfies $d \phi_{p}(X)=-X$ for all $X \in T_{p} M$.

Example 7.30. Let $p$ be an arbitrary point on the standard sphere $S^{m}$ as a subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$. Then the reflection $\rho_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ about the line generated by $p$ is given by

$$
\rho_{p}: q \mapsto 2\langle q, p\rangle p-q .
$$

This is a linear map hence identical to is differential $\rho_{p}: \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$. The restriction $\phi_{p}=\left.\rho_{p}\right|_{S^{m}}: S^{m} \rightarrow S^{m}$ is an isometry that fixes $p$. Its tangent map $d \phi_{p}: T_{p} S^{m} \rightarrow T_{p} S^{m}$ satisfies $d \phi_{p}(X)=-X$ for all $X \in T_{p} S^{m}$. This shows that the homogeneous space $S^{m}$ is symmetric.

Proposition 7.31. Every Riemannian symmetric space is complete.

Proof. See Exercise 7.9.
Theorem 7.32. Let $(M, g)$ be a complete Riemannian manifold which is path-connected. If $p, q \in M$ then there exists a geodesic $\gamma$ : $\mathbb{R} \rightarrow M$ such that $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\gamma(1)=q$.

Proof. See Exercise 7.10.
Theorem 7.33. Every Riemannian symmetric space is homogeneous.

Proof. See Exercise 7.11.

## Exercises

Exercise 7.1. The result of Exercise 5.3 shows that the two dimensional hyperbolic disc $H^{2}$ introduced in Example 5.9 is isometric to the upper half plane $M=\left(\left\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^{2} \mid y \in \mathbb{R}^{+}\right\}\right.$equipped with the Riemannian metric

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{1}{y^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{2}} .
$$

Use your local library to find all geodesics in $(M, g)$.
Exercise 7.2. Let the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ be equipped with the standard left-invariant metric

$$
g(A, B)=\operatorname{trace}\left(A^{t} B\right) .
$$

Prove that a $C^{2}$-curve $\gamma:(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \rightarrow \mathbf{O}(m)$ is a geodesic if and only if

$$
\gamma^{t} \cdot \ddot{\gamma}=\ddot{\gamma}^{t} \cdot \gamma .
$$

Exercise 7.3. For the real parameter $\theta \in(0, \pi / 2)$ define the 2dimensional torus $T_{\theta}^{2}$ by

$$
T_{\theta}^{2}=\left\{\left(\cos \theta e^{i \alpha}, \sin \theta e^{i \beta}\right) \in S^{3} \mid \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}\right\} .
$$

Determine for which $\theta \in(0, \pi / 2)$ the torus $T_{\theta}^{2}$ is a minimal submanifold of the 3 -dimensional sphere

$$
S^{3}=\left\{\left.\left(z_{1}, z_{2}\right) \in \mathbb{C}^{2}| | z_{1}\right|^{2}+\left|z_{2}\right|^{2}=1\right\} .
$$

Exercise 7.4. Find a proof of Proposition 7.24.
Exercise 7.5. Find a proof of Corollary 7.25.
Exercise 7.6. Determine the totally geodesic submanifolds of the $m$-dimensional real projective space $\mathbb{R} P^{m}$.

Exercise 7.7. Find a proof of Corollary 7.28.
Exercise 7.8. Let the orthogonal group $\mathbf{O}(m)$ be equipped with the left-invariant metric

$$
g(A, B)=\operatorname{trace}\left(A^{t} B\right)
$$

and let $K$ be a Lie subgroup of $\mathbf{O}(m)$. Prove that $K$ is totally geodesic in $\mathbf{O}(m)$.

Exercise 7.9. Find a proof of Proposition 7.31.
Exercise 7.10. Use your local library to find a proof of Theorem 7.32.

Exercise 7.11. Find a proof of Theorem 7.33.

## CHAPTER 8

## The Riemann Curvature Tensor

In this chapter we introduce the Riemann curvature tensor and the sectional curvatures of a Riemannian manifold. These notions generalise the Gaussian curvature playing a central role in the classical differential geometry of surfaces. We prove that the Euclidean spaces, the standard spheres and the hyperbolic spaces all have constant sectional curvature. We determine the Riemannian curvature tensor for manifolds of constant sectional curvature and also for an important class of Lie groups. We then derive the important Gauss equation comparing the sectional curvatures of a submanifold and that of its ambient space.

Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\nabla$ be its Levi-Civita connection. Then to each vector field $X \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ we have the first order covariant derivative

$$
\nabla_{X}: C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

in the direction of $X$ satisfying

$$
\nabla_{X}: Z \mapsto \nabla_{X} Z
$$

We shall now generalise this and introduce the covariant derivative of tensor fields of type $(r, 0)$ or $(r, 1)$.

As a motivation, let us assume that $A$ is a tensor field of type $(2,1)$. If we differentiate $A(Y, Z)$ in the direction of $X$ applying the naive "product rule"

$$
\nabla_{X}(A(Y, Z))=\left(\nabla_{X} A\right)(Y, Z)+A\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)+A\left(Y, \nabla_{X} Z\right)
$$

we yield

$$
\left(\nabla_{X} A\right)(Y, Z)=\nabla_{X}(A(Y, Z))-A\left(\nabla_{X} Y, Z\right)-A\left(Y, \nabla_{X} Z\right)
$$

where $\nabla_{X} A$ is the "covariant derivative" of the tensor field $A$ in the direction of $X$. This idea turns out to be very useful and leads to the following formal definition.

Definition 8.1. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold with LeviCivita connection $\nabla$. For a tensor field $A: C_{r}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)$ of
type $(r, 0)$ we define its covariant derivative

$$
\nabla A: C_{r+1}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)
$$

by

$$
\begin{gathered}
\nabla A:\left(X, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right) \mapsto\left(\nabla_{X} A\right)\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)= \\
X\left(A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)\right)-\sum_{k=1}^{r} A\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k-1}, \nabla_{X} X_{k}, X_{k+1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

A tensor field $A$ of type $(r, 0)$ is said to be parallel if $\nabla A \equiv 0$.
The following result can be seen as, yet another, compatibility of the Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ of $(M, g)$ with the Riemannian metric $g$.

Proposition 8.2. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Then the metric $g$ is a parallel tensor field of type (2,0).

Proof. See Exercise 8.1.
Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Then we already know that its Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ is tensorial in its first argument i.e. if $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ and $f, g \in C^{\infty}(M)$ then

$$
\nabla_{(f X+g Y)^{Z}}=f \nabla_{X} Z+g \nabla_{Y} Z
$$

This means that a vector field $Z \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ on $M$ induces a natural tensor field $\mathcal{Z}: C_{1}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)$ of type $(1,1)$ given by

$$
\mathcal{Z}: X \mapsto \nabla_{X} Z
$$

Definition 8.3. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold with LeviCivita connection $\nabla$. For a tensor field $B: C_{r}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)$ of type ( $r, 1$ ) we define its covariant derivative

$$
\nabla B: C_{r+1}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)
$$

by

$$
\begin{gathered}
\nabla B:\left(X, X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right) \mapsto\left(\nabla_{X} B\right)\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)= \\
\nabla_{X}\left(B\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right)\right)-\sum_{k=1}^{r} B\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k-1}, \nabla_{X} X_{k}, X_{k+1}, \ldots, X_{r}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

A tensor field $B$ of type $(r, 1)$ is said to be parallel if $\nabla B \equiv 0$.
Definition 8.4. Let $X, Y \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ be two vector fields on the Riemannian manifold ( $M, g$ ) with Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$. Then the second order covariant derivative

$$
\nabla_{X, Y}^{2}: C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

is defined by

$$
\nabla_{X, Y}^{2}: Z \mapsto\left(\nabla_{X} \mathcal{Z}\right)(Y)
$$

where $\mathcal{Z}$ is the natural $(1,1)$-tensor field induced by $Z \in C^{\infty}(T M)$.
As a direct consequence of Definitions 8.3 and 8.4 we see that if $X, Y, Z \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ then the second order covariant derivative $\nabla^{2} X, Y$ satisfies

$$
\nabla_{X, Y}^{2} Z=\nabla_{X}(\mathcal{Z}(Y))-\mathcal{Z}\left(\nabla_{X} Y\right)=\nabla_{X} \nabla_{Y} Z-\nabla_{\nabla_{X}} Y^{Z}
$$

This leads us to the following important definition.
Definition 8.5. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold with LeviCivita connection $\nabla$. Then its Riemann curvature operator

$$
R: C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \times C^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)
$$

is defined as twice the skew-symmetric part of the second covariant derivative $\nabla^{2}$ i.e.

$$
R(X, Y) Z=\nabla_{X, Y}^{2} Z-\nabla_{Y, X^{2}}^{Z}
$$

The next remarkable result shows that the curvature operator is actually a tensor field.

Theorem 8.6. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold with LeviCivita connection $\nabla$. Then the Riemann curvature operator

$$
R: C_{3}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)
$$

satisfying

$$
R(X, Y) Z=\nabla_{X} \nabla_{Y} Z-\nabla_{Y} \nabla_{X} Z-\nabla_{[X, Y]}{ }^{Z}
$$

is a tensor field on $M$ of type $(3,1)$.
Proof. See Exercise 8.2.
The reader should note that the Riemann curvature tensor is an intrinsic object since it only depends on the intrinsic Levi-Civita connection. The following result shows that the curvature tensor has many beautiful symmetries.

Proposition 8.7. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. For vector fields $X, Y, Z, W \in C^{\infty}(T M)$ on $M$ we then have
(i) $R(X, Y) Z=-R(Y, X) Z$,
(ii) $g(R(X, Y) Z, W)=-g(R(X, Y) W, Z)$,
(iii) $R(X, Y) Z+R(Z, X) Y+R(Y, Z) X=0$,
(iv) $g(R(X, Y) Z, W)=g(R(Z, W) X, Y)$,
(v) $6 \cdot R(X, Y) Z=R(X, Y+Z)(Y+Z)-R(X, Y-Z)(Y-Z)$
$+R(X+Z, Y)(X+Z)-R(X-Z, Y)(X-Z)$.
Proof. See Exercise 8.3.
Part (iii) of Proposition 8.7 is the so called first Bianchi identity. The second Bianchi identity is a similar result concerning the covariant derivative $\nabla R$ of the curvature tensor. This will not be treated here.

Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $p \in M$. Then a section $V$ at $p$ is a 2-dimensional subspace of the tangent space $T_{p} M$. The set

$$
G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right)=\left\{V \mid V \text { is a section of } T_{p} M\right\}
$$

of sections is called the Grassmannian of 2-planes at $p$.
Remark 8.8. In Gaussian geometry the tangent space $T_{p} \Sigma$ of a surface $\Sigma$ in the Euclidean $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ is two dimensional. This means that in this case there is only one section at $p \in \Sigma$ namely the full two dimensional tangent plane $T_{p} \Sigma$.

Before introducing the notion of the sectional curvature we need the following technical lemma.

Lemma 8.9. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$ and $X, Y, Z, W \in T_{p} M$ be tangent vectors at $p$ such that the two sections $\operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\{X, Y\}$ and $\operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\{Z, W\}$ are identical. Then

$$
\frac{g(R(X, Y) Y, X)}{|X|^{2}|Y|^{2}-g(X, Y)^{2}}=\frac{g(R(Z, W) W, Z)}{|Z|^{2}|W|^{2}-g(Z, W)^{2}}
$$

Proof. See Exercise 8.4.
Definition 8.10. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $p \in M$ Then the function $K_{p}: G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$
K_{p}: \operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\{X, Y\} \mapsto \frac{g(R(X, Y) Y, X)}{|X|^{2}|Y|^{2}-g(X, Y)^{2}}
$$

is called the sectional curvature at $p$. We usually write $K(X, Y)$ for $K\left(\operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{R}}\{X, Y\}\right)$.

Definition 8.11. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$ and $K_{p}: G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the sectional curvature at $p$. Then we define the functions $\delta, \Delta: M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$
\delta: p \mapsto \min _{V \in G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right)} K_{p}(V) \text { and } \Delta: p \mapsto \max _{V \in G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right)} K_{p}(V)
$$

The Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ is said to be
(i) of positive curvature if $\delta(p) \geq 0$ for all $p$,
(ii) of strictly positive curvature if $\delta(p)>0$ for all $p$,
(iii) of negative curvature if $\Delta(p) \leq 0$ for all $p$,
(iv) of strictly negative curvature if $\Delta(p)<0$ for all $p$,
(v) of constant curvature if $\delta=\Delta$ is constant,
(vi) flat if $\delta \equiv \Delta \equiv 0$.

The next example shows how the Riemann curvature tensor can be presented by means local coordinates. Hopefully this will convince the reader that those should be avoided whenever possible.

Example 8.12. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and let $(U, x)$ be a chart on $M$. For $i, j, k, l=1, \ldots, m$ put

$$
X_{i}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}}, \quad g_{i j}=g\left(X_{i}, X_{j}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad R_{i j k l}=g\left(R\left(X_{i}, X_{j}\right) X_{k}, X_{l}\right)
$$

Then

$$
R_{i j k l}=\sum_{s=1}^{m} g_{s l}\left(\frac{\partial \Gamma_{j k}^{s}}{\partial x_{i}}-\frac{\partial \Gamma_{i k}^{s}}{\partial x_{j}}+\sum_{r=1}^{m}\left\{\Gamma_{j k}^{r} \cdot \Gamma_{i r}^{s}-\Gamma_{i k}^{r} \cdot \Gamma_{j r}^{s}\right\}\right)
$$

where the functions $\Gamma_{i j}^{k}$ are the Christoffel symbols of the Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$ of $(M, g)$ with respect to $(U, x)$.

Proof. Using the fact that $\left[X_{i}, X_{j}\right]=0$, see Proposition 4.29, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R\left(X_{i}, X_{j}\right) X_{k}=\nabla_{X_{i}} \nabla_{X_{j}} X_{k}-\nabla_{X_{j}} \nabla_{X_{i}} X_{k} \\
& =\sum_{s=1}^{m}\left\{\nabla_{X_{i}}\left(\Gamma_{j k}^{s} \cdot X_{s}\right)-\nabla_{X_{j}}\left(\Gamma_{i k}^{s} \cdot X_{s}\right)\right\} \\
& =\sum_{s=1}^{m}\left(\frac{\partial \Gamma_{j k}^{s}}{\partial x_{i}} \cdot X_{s}+\sum_{r=1}^{m} \Gamma_{j k}^{s} \Gamma_{i s}^{r} X_{r}-\frac{\partial \Gamma_{i k}^{s}}{\partial x_{j}} \cdot X_{s}-\sum_{r=1}^{m} \Gamma_{i k}^{s} \Gamma_{j s}^{r} X_{r}\right) \\
& =\sum_{s=1}^{m}\left(\frac{\partial \Gamma_{j k}^{s}}{\partial x_{i}}-\frac{\partial \Gamma_{i k}^{s}}{\partial x_{j}}+\sum_{r=1}^{m}\left\{\Gamma_{j k}^{r} \Gamma_{i r}^{s}-\Gamma_{i k}^{r} \Gamma_{j r}^{s}\right\}\right) X_{s}
\end{aligned}
$$

For the $m$-dimensional vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ equipped with the Euclidean metric $\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}}$ the set $\left\{\partial / \partial x_{1}, \ldots, \partial / \partial x_{m}\right\}$ is a global frame for the tangent bundle $T \mathbb{R}^{m}$. In this situation we have $g_{i j}=\delta_{i j}$, so $\Gamma_{i j}^{k} \equiv 0$ by Example 6.13. This implies that $R \equiv 0$ so $E^{m}$ is flat.

Example 8.13. The standard sphere $S^{m}$ has constant sectional curvature +1 (see Exercises 8.6 and 8.7 ) and the hyperbolic space $H^{m}$ has constant sectional curvature -1 (see Exercise 8.8).

Our next aim is a formula for the curvature tensor for manifolds of constant sectional curvature. This we present in Corollary 8.17. First we need some preparations.

Lemma 8.14. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$ and $Y \in T_{p} M$. Then the map $\tilde{Y}: T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{p} M$ given by

$$
\tilde{Y}: X \mapsto R(X, Y) Y
$$

is a symmetric endomorphism of the tangent space $T_{p} M$.
Proof. If $X, Y, Z \in T_{p} M$ then it follows from Proposition 8.7 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(\tilde{Y}(X), Z) & =g(R(X, Y) Y, Z) \\
& =g(R(Y, Z) X, Y) \\
& =g(R(Z, Y) Y, X) \\
& =g(X, \tilde{Y}(Z))
\end{aligned}
$$

For a tangent vector $Y \in T_{p} M$ with $|Y|=1$ let $\mathcal{N}(Y)$ be the normal space to $Y$

$$
\mathcal{N}(Y)=\left\{X \in T_{p} M \mid g(X, Y)=0\right\}
$$

The fact that $\tilde{Y}(Y)=0$ and Lemma 8.14 ensure the existence of an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m-1}$ for the restriction of the symmetric endomorphism $\tilde{Y}$ to $\mathcal{N}(Y)$. Without loss of generality, we can assume that the corresponding eigenvalues satisfy

$$
\lambda_{1}(p) \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{m-1}(p)
$$

If $X \in \mathcal{N}(Y),|X|=1$ and $\tilde{Y}(X)=\lambda X$ then

$$
K_{p}(X, Y)=g(R(X, Y) Y, X)=g(\tilde{Y}(X), X)=\lambda
$$

This means that the eigenvalues satisfy

$$
\delta(p) \leq \lambda_{1}(p) \leq \cdots \leq \lambda_{m-1}(p) \leq \Delta(p)
$$

Definition 8.15. For a Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ define the tensor field $R_{1}: C_{3}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(T M)$ of type $(3,1)$ by

$$
R_{1}(X, Y) Z=g(Y, Z) X-g(X, Z) Y
$$

Proposition 8.16. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $X, Y, Z \in$ $C^{\infty}(T M)$ be vector fields on $M$. Then
(i) $\left|R(X, Y) Y-\frac{\delta+\Delta}{2} R_{1}(X, Y) Y\right| \leq \frac{1}{2}(\Delta-\delta)|X||Y|^{2}$
(ii) $\left|R(X, Y) Z-\frac{\delta+\Delta}{2} R_{1}(X, Y) Z\right| \leq \frac{2}{3}(\Delta-\delta)|X||Y||Z|$

Proof. Without loss of generality we can assume that $|X|=|Y|=$ $|Z|=1$. If $X=X^{\perp}+X^{\top}$ with $X^{\perp} \perp Y$ and $X^{\top}$ is a multiple of $Y$ then $R(X, Y) Z=R\left(X^{\perp}, Y\right) Z$ and $\left|X^{\perp}\right| \leq|X|$ so we can also assume that $X \perp Y$. Then $R_{1}(X, Y) Y=\langle Y, Y\rangle X-\langle X, Y\rangle Y=X$.

The first statement follows from the fact that the symmetric endomorphism of $T_{p} M$ with

$$
X \mapsto\left\{R(X, Y) Y-\frac{\Delta+\delta}{2} \cdot X\right\}
$$

restricted to $\mathcal{N}(Y)$ has eigenvalues in the interval $\left[\frac{\delta-\Delta}{2}, \frac{\Delta-\delta}{2}\right]$.
It is easily checked that the operator $R_{1}$ satisfies the conditions of Proposition 8.7 and hence $D=R-\frac{\Delta+\delta}{2} \cdot R_{1}$ as well. This implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
6 \cdot D(X, Y) Z & =D(X, Y+Z)(Y+Z)-D(X, Y-Z)(Y-Z) \\
& +D(X+Z, Y)(X+Z)-D(X-Z, Y)(X-Z) .
\end{aligned}
$$

The second statement then follows from

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 6|D(X, Y) Z| \leq \frac{1}{2}(\Delta-\delta)\left\{|X|\left(|Y+Z|^{2}+|Y-Z|^{2}\right)\right. \\
&\left.\quad \quad+|Y|\left(|X+Z|^{2}+|X-Z|^{2}\right)\right\} \\
&=\frac{1}{2}(\Delta-\delta)\left\{2|X|\left(|Y|^{2}+|Z|^{2}\right)+2|Y|\left(|X|^{2}+|Z|^{2}\right)\right\} \\
&=4(\Delta-\delta) .
\end{aligned}
$$

As a direct consequence of Proposition 8.16 we have the following useful result.

Corollary 8.17. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold of constant curvature $\kappa$. Then the curvature tensor $R$ is given by

$$
R(X, Y) Z=\kappa \cdot(g(Y, Z) X-g(X, Z) Y)
$$

Proof. The result follows immediately from $\kappa=\delta=\Delta$.
The following result shows that the curvature tensor takes a rather simple form in the important class of Lie groups treated in Proposition 6.12.

Proposition 8.18. Let $(G, g)$ be a Lie group equipped with a leftinvariant metric such that for all $X \in \mathfrak{g}$ the endomorphism

$$
\operatorname{ad}_{X}: \mathfrak{g} \rightarrow \mathfrak{g}
$$

is skew-symmetric with respect to $g$. Then for left-invariant vector fields $X, Y, Z \in \mathfrak{g}$ the curvature tensor $R$ is given by

$$
R(X, Y) Z=-\frac{1}{4}[[X, Y], Z]
$$

Proof. See Exercise 8.9.
We shall now prove the important Gauss equation comparing the curvature tensors of a submanifold and its ambient space in terms of the second fundamental form.

Theorem 8.19. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a submanifold of $N$ equipped with the induced metric $g$. Let $X, Y, Z, W \in$ $C^{\infty}(T N)$ be vector fields extending $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}, \tilde{Z}, \tilde{W} \in C^{\infty}(T M)$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& g(\tilde{R}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) \tilde{Z}, \tilde{W})-h(R(X, Y) Z, W) \\
= & h(B(\tilde{Y}, \tilde{Z}), B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{W}))-h(B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Z}), B(\tilde{Y}, \tilde{W})) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. Using the definitions of the curvature tensors $R, \tilde{R}$, the Levi-Civita connection $\tilde{\nabla}$ and the second fundamental form of $\tilde{M}$ in $M$ we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& g(\tilde{R}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) \tilde{Z}, \tilde{W}) \\
= & \left.g\left(\tilde{\nabla}_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{\nabla}_{\tilde{Y}} \tilde{Z}-\tilde{\nabla}_{\tilde{Y}} \tilde{\nabla}_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Z}-\tilde{\nabla}_{[ } \tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}\right]^{\tilde{Z}}, \tilde{W}\right) \\
= & h\left(\left(\nabla_{X}\left(\nabla_{Y} Z-B(Y, Z)\right)\right)^{\top}-\left(\nabla_{Y}\left(\nabla_{X} Z-B(X, Z)\right)\right)^{\top}, W\right) \\
& \quad-h\left(\left(\nabla_{[X, Y]} Z-B([X, Y], Z)\right)^{\top}, W\right) \\
= & h\left(\nabla_{X} \nabla_{Y} Z-\nabla_{Y} \nabla_{X} Z-\nabla_{[X, Y]^{Z}}, W\right) \\
& \left.\quad-h\left(\nabla_{X}(B(Y, Z)), W\right)+\nabla_{Y}(B(X, Z)), W\right) \\
= & h(R(X, Y) Z, W) \\
\quad & \left.\quad h\left((B(Y, Z)), \nabla_{X} W\right)-h(B(X, Z)), \nabla_{Y} W\right) \\
= & h(R(X, Y) Z, W) \\
& \quad h(B(Y, Z), B(X, W))-h(B(X, Z), B(Y, W)) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We shall now apply the Gauss equation to the classical situation of a surface in the three dimensional Euclidean space.

Example 8.20. Let $\Sigma$ be a regular surface in the Euclidean $\mathbb{R}^{3}$. Let $\{\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}\}$ be a local orthonormal frame for the tangent bundle $T \Sigma$ of $\Sigma$ around a point $p \in \Sigma$ and $\tilde{N}$ be the local Gauss map with $\tilde{N}=\tilde{X} \times \tilde{Y}$. If $X, Y, N$ are local extensions of $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}, \tilde{N}$, such that $\{X, Y, N\}$ is a
local orthonormal frame for $T \mathbb{R}^{3}$, then the second fundamental form $B$ of $\Sigma$ in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) & =\left(\partial_{X} Y\right)^{\perp} \\
& =<\partial_{X} Y, N>N \\
& =-<Y, \partial_{X} N>N \\
& =-<Y, d N(X)>N \\
& =<Y, S_{p}(X)>N
\end{aligned}
$$

where $S_{p}: T_{p} \Sigma \rightarrow T_{p} \Sigma$ is the shape operator at $p$. If we now apply the fact that $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ is flat, then the Gauss equation tells us that the sectional curvature $K(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y})$ of $\Sigma$ at $p$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
K(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) & =<\tilde{R}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) \tilde{Y}, \tilde{X}> \\
& =<B(\tilde{Y}, \tilde{Y}), B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{X})>-<B(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}), B(\tilde{Y}, \tilde{X})> \\
& =\operatorname{det} S_{p}
\end{aligned}
$$

In other word, the sectional curvature $K(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y})$ is the determinant of the shape operator $S_{p}$ at $p$ i.e. the classical Gaussian curvature.

An interesting consequence of the Gauss equation is the following useful result. For important applications see Exercises 8.7 and 8.8.

Corollary 8.21. Let $(N, h)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $M$ be a totally geodesic submanifold of $N$ equipped with the induced metric g. Let $X, Y, Z, W \in C^{\infty}(T N)$ be vector fields extending $\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}, \tilde{Z}, \tilde{W} \in$ $C^{\infty}(T M)$. Then

$$
g(\tilde{R}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) \tilde{Z}, \tilde{W})=h(R(X, Y) Z, W)
$$

Proof. This follows directly from the fact that the second fundamental for $B$ of $M$ in $N$ vanishes identically.

We conclude this chapter by defining the Ricci and scalar curvatures of a Riemannian manifold. These are obtained by taking traces over the curvature tensor and play an important role in Riemannian geometry.

Definition 8.22. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, then we define
(i) the Ricci operator $r: C_{1}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{1}^{\infty}(M)$ by

$$
r(X)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} R\left(X, e_{i}\right) e_{i}
$$

(ii) the Ricci curvature Ric : $C_{2}^{\infty}(T M) \rightarrow C_{0}^{\infty}(T M)$ by

$$
\operatorname{Ric}(X, Y)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} g\left(R\left(X, e_{i}\right) e_{i}, Y\right)
$$

(iii) the scalar curvature $s \in C^{\infty}(M)$ by

$$
s=\sum_{j=1}^{m} \operatorname{Ric}\left(e_{j}, e_{j}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{m} \sum_{i=1}^{m} g\left(R\left(e_{i}, e_{j}\right) e_{j}, e_{i}\right) .
$$

Here $\left\{e_{1}, \ldots, e_{m}\right\}$ is any local orthonormal frame for the tangent bundle.

In the case of constant sectional curvature we have the following result.

Corollary 8.23. Let $\left(M^{m}, g\right)$ be a Riemannian manifold of constant sectional curvature $\kappa$. Then its scalar curvature satisfies the following

$$
s=m \cdot(m-1) \cdot \kappa .
$$

Proof. Let $\left\{e_{1}, \ldots, e_{m}\right\}$ be any local orthonormal frame. Then Corollary 8.17 implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Ric}\left(e_{j}, e_{j}\right) & =\sum_{i=1}^{m} g\left(R\left(e_{j}, e_{i}\right) e_{i}, e_{j}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{m} g\left(\kappa\left(g\left(e_{i}, e_{i}\right) e_{j}-g\left(e_{j}, e_{i}\right) e_{i}\right), e_{j}\right) \\
& =\kappa\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m} g\left(e_{i}, e_{i}\right) g\left(e_{j}, e_{j}\right)-\sum_{i=1}^{m} g\left(e_{i}, e_{j}\right) g\left(e_{i}, e_{j}\right)\right) \\
& =\kappa\left(\sum_{i=1}^{m} 1-\sum_{i=1}^{m} \delta_{i j}\right)=(m-1) \cdot \kappa .
\end{aligned}
$$

To obtain the formula for the scalar curvature $s$ we only need to multiply the constant Ricci curvature $\operatorname{Ric}\left(e_{j}, e_{j}\right)$ by $m$.

As a reference on further notions of curvature we recommend the interesting book, Wolfgang Kühnel, Differential Geometry: Curves Surfaces - Manifolds, American Mathematical Society (2002).

## Exercises

Exercise 8.1. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Prove that the tensor field $g$ of type $(2,0)$ is parallel with respect to the Levi-Civita connection.

Exercise 8.2. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. Prove that the Riemann curvature operator $R$ is a tensor field of type ( 3,1 ).

Exercise 8.3. Find a proof for Proposition 8.7.
Exercise 8.4. Find a proof for Lemma 8.9.
Exercise 8.5. Let $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $\mathbb{C}^{m}$ be equipped with their standard Euclidean metric $g$ given by

$$
g(z, w)=\operatorname{Re} \sum_{k=1}^{m} z_{k} \bar{w}_{k}
$$

and let $T^{m}=\left\{z \in \mathbb{C}^{m}| | z_{1}\left|=\ldots=\left|z_{m}\right|=1\right\}\right.$ be the $m$-dimensional torus in $\mathbb{C}^{m}$ with the induced metric. Find an isometric immersion $\phi: \mathbb{R}^{m} \rightarrow T^{m}$, determine all geodesics on $T^{m}$ and prove that the torus is flat.

Exercise 8.6. Let the Lie group $S^{3} \cong \mathbf{S U}(2)$ be equipped with the metric

$$
g(Z, W)=\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{Re}\left(\operatorname{trace}\left(\bar{Z}^{t} W\right)\right)
$$

(i) Find an orthonormal basis for $T_{e} \mathbf{S U}(2)$.
(ii) Prove that $(\mathbf{S U}(2), g)$ has constant sectional curvature +1 .

Exercise 8.7. Let $S^{m}$ be the unit sphere in $\mathbb{R}^{m+1}$ equipped with the standard Euclidean metric $\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m+1}}$. Use the results of Corollaries 7.27, 8.21 and Exercise 8.6 to prove that $\left(S^{m},\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m+1}}\right)$ has constant sectional curvature +1 .

Exercise 8.8. Let $H^{m}$ be the $m$-dimensional hyperbolic space modelled on the upper half space $\mathbb{R}^{+} \times \mathbb{R}^{m-1}$ equipped with the Riemannian metric

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{1}{x_{1}^{2}}\langle X, Y\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{m}},
$$

where $x=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}\right) \in H^{m}$. For $k=1, \ldots, m$ let the vector fields $X_{k} \in C^{\infty}\left(T H^{m}\right)$ be given by

$$
\left(X_{k}\right)_{x}=x_{1} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{k}}
$$

and define the operation $*$ on $H^{m}$ by

$$
(\alpha, x) *(\beta, y)=(\alpha \cdot \beta, \alpha \cdot y+x)
$$

Prove that
(i) $\left(H^{m}, *\right)$ is a Lie group,
(ii) the vector fields $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ are left-invariant,
(iii) $\left[X_{k}, X_{l}\right]=0$ and $\left[X_{1}, X_{k}\right]=X_{k}$ for $k, l=2, \ldots, m$,
(iv) the metric $g$ is left-invariant,
(v) $\left(H^{m}, g\right)$ has constant curvature -1 .

Compare with Exercises 6.4 and 7.1.
Exercise 8.9. Find a proof for Proposition 8.18.

## CHAPTER 9

## Curvature and Local Geometry

This chapter is devoted to the study of the local geometry of a Riemannian manifold and how this is controlled by its curvature tensor. For this we introduce the notion of a Jacobi field which is a standard tool in differential geometry. With this at hand we obtain a fundamental comparison result describing the curvature dependence of local distances.

Definition 9.1. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold. By a smooth 1-parameter family of geodesics we mean a $C^{\infty}$-map

$$
\Phi:(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \times I \rightarrow M
$$

such that the curve $\gamma_{t}: I \rightarrow M$ given by $\gamma_{t}: s \mapsto \Phi(t, s)$ is a geodesic for all $t \in(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$. The variable $t \in(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$ is called the family parameter of $\Phi$.

The following result suggests that the Riemann curvature tensor is closely related to the local behaviour of geodesics.

Proposition 9.2. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\Phi$ : $(-\epsilon, \epsilon) \times I \rightarrow M$ be a 1-parameter family of geodesics. Then for each $t \in(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$ the vector field $J_{t}: I \rightarrow C^{\infty}(T M)$ along $\gamma_{t}$, given by

$$
J_{t}(s)=\frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t}(t, s),
$$

satisfies the second order linear ordinary differential equation

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}_{t}} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}_{t}} J_{t}+R\left(J_{t}, \dot{\gamma}_{t}\right) \dot{\gamma}_{t}=0
$$

Proof. Along $\Phi$ we put $X(t, s)=\partial \Phi / \partial s$ and $J(t, s)=\partial \Phi / \partial t$. The fact that $[\partial / \partial t, \partial / \partial s]=0$ implies that

$$
[J, X]=[d \Phi(\partial / \partial t), d \Phi(\partial / \partial s)]=d \Phi([\partial / \partial t, \partial / \partial s])=0
$$

Since $\Phi$ is a family of geodesics we have $\nabla_{X} X=0$ and the definition of the curvature tensor then implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
R(J, X) X & =\nabla_{J} \nabla_{X} X-\nabla_{X} \nabla_{J} X-\nabla_{[J, X]} X \\
& =-\nabla_{X} \nabla_{J} X \\
& 107
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=-\nabla_{X} \nabla_{X} J
$$

Hence for each $t \in(-\epsilon, \epsilon)$ we have

$$
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}_{t}} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}_{t}} J_{t}+R\left(J_{t}, \dot{\gamma}_{t}\right) \dot{\gamma}_{t}=0
$$

The result of Proposition 9.2 leads to the following natural notion.
Definition 9.3. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic and $X=\dot{\gamma}$ be the tangent vector field along $\gamma$. A $C^{2}$ vector field $J$ along $\gamma$ is called a Jacobi field if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla_{X} \nabla_{X}^{J}+R(J, X) X=0 \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

along $\gamma$. We denote the space of all Jacobi fields along $\gamma$ by $\mathcal{J}_{\gamma}(T M)$.
We now give an example of a 1-parameter family of geodesics in the Euclidean space $E^{m+1}$.

Example 9.4. Let $c, n: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow E^{m+1}$ be smooth curves such that the image $n(\mathbb{R})$ of $n$ is contained in the unit sphere $S^{m}$. If we define a $\operatorname{map} \Phi: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow E^{m+1}$ by

$$
\Phi:(t, s) \mapsto c(t)+s \cdot n(t)
$$

then for each $t \in \mathbb{R}$ the curve $\gamma_{t}: s \mapsto \Phi(t, s)$ is a straight line and hence a geodesic in $E^{m+1}$. By differentiating this with respect to the family parameter $t$ we yield the Jacobi field $J \in \mathcal{J}_{\gamma_{0}}\left(T E^{m+1}\right)$ along $\gamma_{0}$ satisfying

$$
J(s)=\left.\frac{d}{d t} \Phi(t, s)\right|_{t=0}=\dot{c}(0)+s \cdot \dot{n}(0)
$$

The Jacobi equation (5) is linear in $J$. This means that the space of Jacobi fields $\mathcal{J}_{\gamma}(T M)$ along $\gamma$ is a vector space. We are now interested in determining its dimension.

Proposition 9.5. Let $\left(M^{m}, g\right)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$, $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $X=\dot{\gamma}$ be the tangent vector field along $\gamma$. If $v, w \in T_{p} M$ are two tangent vectors at $p$ then there exists a unique Jacobi field $J$ along $\gamma$ such that

$$
J_{p}=v \quad \text { and } \quad\left(\nabla_{X}^{J}\right)_{p}=w .
$$

Proof. In the spirit of Proposition 7.8 let $\left\{X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}\right\}$ be an orthonormal frame of parallel vector fields along $\gamma$. If $J$ is a vector field along $\gamma$ then

$$
J=\sum_{i=1}^{m} a_{i} X_{i},
$$

where $a_{i}=g\left(J, X_{i}\right)$ are smooth functions on the real interval $I$. The vector fields $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ are parallel so

$$
\nabla_{X} J=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \dot{a}_{i} X_{i} \text { and } \nabla_{X} \nabla_{X} J=\sum_{i=1}^{m} \ddot{a}_{i} X_{i} .
$$

For the curvature tensor we have

$$
R\left(X_{i}, X\right) X=\sum_{k=1}^{m} b_{i}^{k} X_{k}
$$

where $b_{i}^{k}=g\left(R\left(X_{i}, X\right) X, X_{k}\right)$ are smooth functions on the real interval $I$, heavily depending on the geometry of $(M, g)$. This means that $R(J, X) X$ is given by

$$
R(J, X) X=\sum_{i, k=1}^{m} a_{i} b_{i}^{k} X_{k}
$$

and that $J$ is a Jacobi field if and only if

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(\ddot{a}_{i}+\sum_{k=1}^{m} a_{k} b_{k}^{i}\right) X_{i}=0 .
$$

This is clearly equivalent to the following second order system of linear ordinary differential equations in $a=\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)$ :

$$
\ddot{a}_{i}+\sum_{k=1}^{m} a_{k} b_{k}^{i}=0 \quad \text { for all } i=1,2, \ldots, m
$$

A global solution will always exist and is uniquely determined by the initial values $a(0)$ and $\dot{a}(0)$. This implies that $J$ exists globally and is uniquely determined by the initial conditions

$$
J(0)=v \text { and }\left(\nabla_{X} J\right)(0)=w
$$

As an immediate consequence of Proposition 9.5 we have the following interesting result.

Corollary 9.6. Let $\left(M^{m}, g\right)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\gamma$ : $I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic in $M$. Then the vector space $\mathcal{J}_{\gamma}(T M)$, of Jacobi fields along $\gamma$, has the dimension $2 m$.

The following Lemma 9.7 shows that when proving results about Jacobi fields along a geodesic $\gamma$ we can always assume, without loss of generality, that that they are parametrised by arclength i.e. $|\dot{\gamma}|=1$.

Lemma 9.7. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic and $J$ be a Jacobi field along $\gamma$. If $\lambda$ is a non-zero real number and $\sigma: \lambda I \rightarrow I$ is given by $\sigma: t \mapsto t / \lambda$, then $\gamma \circ \sigma: \lambda I \rightarrow M$ is a geodesic and $J \circ \sigma$ is a Jacobi field along $\gamma \circ \sigma$.

Proof. See Exercise 9.1.
The next result shows that both the tangential and the normal parts of a Jacobi field are again Jacobi fields. Furthermore we completely determine the tangential Jacobi fields.

Proposition 9.8. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $\gamma: I \rightarrow$ $M$ be a geodesic with $|\dot{\gamma}|=1$ and $J$ be a Jacobi field along $\gamma$. Let $J^{\top}$ be the tangential part of $J$ given by

$$
J^{\top}=g(J, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma} \text { and } J^{\perp}=J-J^{\top}
$$

be its normal part. Then $J^{\top}$ and $J^{\perp}$ are Jacobi fields along $\gamma$ and there exist $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $J^{\top}(s)=(a s+b) \dot{\gamma}(s)$ for all $s \in I$.

Proof. In this situation we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} J^{\top}+R\left(J^{\top}, \dot{\gamma}\right) \dot{\gamma} & =\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}}(g(J, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma})+R(g(J, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma} \\
& =g\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} J, \dot{\gamma}\right) \dot{\gamma} \\
& =-g(R(J, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma} \\
& =0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that the tangential part $J^{\top}$ of $J$ is a Jacobi field. The fact that $\mathcal{J}_{\gamma}(T M)$ is a vector space implies that the normal part $J^{\perp}=$ $J-J^{\top}$ of $J$ also is a Jacobi field.

By differentiating $g(J, \dot{\gamma})$ twice along $\gamma$ we obtain

$$
\frac{d^{2}}{d s^{2}}(g(J, \dot{\gamma}))=g\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} \nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} J, \dot{\gamma}\right)=-g(R(J, \dot{\gamma}) \dot{\gamma}, \dot{\gamma})=0
$$

so $g(J, \dot{\gamma}(s))=(a s+b)$ for some $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$.
Corollary 9.9. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold, $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic and $J$ be a Jacobi field along $\gamma$. If

$$
g\left(J\left(t_{0}\right), \dot{\gamma}\left(t_{0}\right)\right)=0 \quad \text { and } \quad g\left(\left(\nabla_{\dot{\gamma}} J\right)\left(t_{0}\right), \dot{\gamma}\left(t_{0}\right)\right)=0
$$

for some $t_{0} \in I$, then $g(J(t), \dot{\gamma}(t))=0$ for all $t \in I$.
Proof. This is a direct consequence of the fact that the function $g(J, \dot{\gamma})$ satisfies the second order ordinary differential equation $\ddot{f}=0$ and the initial conditions $f(0)=0$ and $\dot{f}(0)=0$.

Our next aim is to show that if the Riemannian manifold $(M, g)$ has constant sectional curvature then we can completely solve the Jacobi equation

$$
\nabla_{X} \nabla_{X} J+R(J, X) X=0
$$

along any given geodesic $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$. For this we introduce the following useful notation. For a real number $\kappa \in \mathbb{R}$ we define the functions $c_{\kappa}, s_{\kappa}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$
c_{\kappa}(s)= \begin{cases}\cosh (\sqrt{|\kappa|} s) & \text { if } \kappa<0 \\ 1 & \text { if } \kappa=0 \\ \cos (\sqrt{\kappa} s) & \text { if } \kappa>0\end{cases}
$$

and

$$
s_{\kappa}(s)= \begin{cases}\sinh (\sqrt{|\kappa|} s) / \sqrt{|\kappa|} & \text { if } \kappa<0, \\ s & \text { if } \kappa=0, \\ \sin (\sqrt{\kappa} s) / \sqrt{\kappa} & \text { if } \kappa>0 .\end{cases}
$$

It is a well known fact that the unique solution to the initial value problem

$$
\ddot{f}+\kappa \cdot f=0, \quad f(0)=a \quad \text { and } \dot{f}(0)=b
$$

is the function $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $f(s)=a c_{\kappa}(s)+b s_{\kappa}(s)$.
We now give examples of Jacobi fields in the three model geometries of dimension two, the Euclidean plane, the sphere and hyperbolic plane, all of constant sectional curvature.

Example 9.10. Let $\mathbb{C}$ be the complex plane with the standard Euclidean metric $\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{2}}$ of constant sectional curvature $\kappa=0$. The rotations about the origin produce a 1-parameter family of geodesics $\Phi_{t}: s \mapsto s e^{i t}$. Along the geodesic $\gamma_{0}: s \mapsto s$ we yield the Jacobi field

$$
J_{0}(s)=\frac{\partial \Phi_{t}}{\partial t}(0, s)=i s
$$

with $\left|J_{0}(s)\right|^{2}=s^{2}=\left|s_{\kappa}(s)\right|^{2}$.
Example 9.11. Let $S^{2}$ be the unit sphere in the standard three dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{R}$ with the induced metric of constant sectional curvature $\kappa=+1$. Rotations about the $\mathbb{R}$-axis produce a 1 parameter family of geodesics $\Phi_{t}: s \mapsto\left(\sin (s) e^{i t}, \cos (s)\right)$. Along the geodesic $\gamma_{0}: s \mapsto(\sin (s), \cos (s))$ we have the Jacobi field

$$
J_{0}(s)=\frac{\partial \Phi_{t}}{\partial t}(0, s)=(i \sin (s), 0)
$$

with $\left|J_{0}(s)\right|^{2}=\sin ^{2}(s)=\left|s_{\kappa}(s)\right|^{2}$.

Example 9.12. Let $B_{1}^{2}(0)$ be the open unit disk in the complex plane with the hyperbolic metric

$$
g(X, Y)=\frac{4}{\left(1-|z|^{2}\right)^{2}}\langle,\rangle_{\mathbb{R}^{2}}
$$

of constant sectional curvature $\kappa=-1$. Rotations about the origin produce a 1-parameter family of geodesics $\Phi_{t}: s \mapsto \tanh (s / 2) e^{i t}$. Along the geodesic $\gamma_{0}: s \mapsto \tanh (s / 2)$ we obtain the Jacobi field

$$
J_{0}(s)=\frac{\partial \Phi_{t}}{\partial t}(0, s)=i \cdot \tanh (s / 2)
$$

with

$$
\left|J_{0}(s)\right|^{2}=\frac{4 \cdot \tanh ^{2}(s / 2)}{\left(1-\tanh ^{2}(s / 2)\right)^{2}}=\sinh ^{2}(s)=\left|s_{\kappa}(s)\right|^{2} .
$$

We are now ready to show that, in the case of constant sectional curvature, we can solve the Jacobi equation along any geodesic.

Example 9.13. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold of constant sectional curvature $\kappa$ and $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic with $|X|=1$ where $X=\dot{\gamma}$ is the tangent vector field along $\gamma$. Following Proposition 7.8 let $P_{1}, P_{2}, \ldots, P_{m-1}$ be parallel vector fields along $\gamma$ such that

$$
g\left(P_{i}, P_{j}\right)=\delta_{i j} \text { and } g\left(P_{i}, X\right)=0
$$

Then any vector field $J$ along $\gamma$ may be written as

$$
J(s)=\sum_{i=1}^{m-1} f_{i}(s) P_{i}(s)+f_{m}(s) X(s) .
$$

Since the vector fields $P_{1}, P_{2}, \ldots, P_{m-1}, X$ are parallel along $\gamma$ this means that $J$ is a Jacobi field if and only if

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=1}^{m-1} \ddot{f}_{i}(s) P_{i}(s)+\ddot{f}_{m}(s) X(s) & =\nabla_{X} \nabla_{X} J \\
& =-R(J, X) X \\
& =-R\left(J^{\perp}, X\right) X \\
& =-\kappa\left(g(X, X) J^{\perp}-g\left(J^{\perp}, X\right) X\right) \\
& =-\kappa J^{\perp} \\
& =-\kappa \sum_{i=1}^{m-1} f_{i}(s) P_{i}(s) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This is equivalent to the following system of ordinary differential equations
(6) $\quad \ddot{f}_{m}(s)=0$ and $\ddot{f}_{i}(s)+\kappa f_{i}(s)=0$ for all $i=1,2, \ldots, m-1$.

It is clear that for the initial values

$$
\begin{aligned}
J\left(s_{0}\right) & =\sum_{i=1}^{m-1} v_{i} P_{i}\left(s_{0}\right)+v_{m} X\left(s_{0}\right), \\
\left(\nabla_{X} J\right)\left(s_{0}\right) & =\sum_{i=1}^{m-1} w_{i} P_{i}\left(s_{0}\right)+w_{m} X\left(s_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

or equivalently

$$
f_{i}\left(s_{0}\right)=v_{i} \text { and } \dot{f_{i}}\left(s_{0}\right)=w_{i} \text { for all } i=1,2, \ldots, m
$$

we have a unique and explicit solution to the system (6) on the whole of the interval $I$. They are given by

$$
f_{m}(s)=v_{m}+s w_{m} \text { and } f_{i}(s)=v_{i} c_{\kappa}(s)+w_{i} s_{\kappa}(s)
$$

for all $i=1,2, \ldots, m-1$. It should be noted that if $g(J, X)=0$ and $J(0)=0$ then

$$
|J(s)|=\left|\left(\nabla_{X} J\right)(0)\right| \cdot\left|s_{\kappa}(s)\right| .
$$

In the next example we give a complete description of the Jacobi fields along a geodesic on the 2-dimensional sphere.

Example 9.14. Let $S^{2}$ be the unit sphere in the three dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{R}$ equipped with the induced metric of constant sectional curvature $\kappa=+1$. Further let $\gamma: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow S^{2}$ be the geodesic given by $\gamma: s \mapsto\left(e^{i s}, 0\right)$. Then the tangent vector field along $\gamma$ satisfies

$$
\dot{\gamma}(s)=\left(i e^{i s}, 0\right) .
$$

It then follows from Proposition 9.8 that all the Jacobi fields tangent to $\gamma$ are given by

$$
J_{(a, b)}^{T}(s)=(a s+b)\left(i e^{i s}, 0\right),
$$

where $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. The unit vector field $P: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow T S^{2}$ given by

$$
s \mapsto\left(\left(e^{i s}, 0\right),(0,1)\right)
$$

is clearly normal along $\gamma$. In $S^{2}$ the tangent vector field $\dot{\gamma}$ is parallel along $\gamma$ so $P$ must be parallel. This implies that all the Jacobi fields orthogonal to $\dot{\gamma}$ are given by

$$
J_{(a, b)}^{N}(s)=(0, a \cos s+b \sin s),
$$

where $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$.

In more general situations, where we do assume constant sectional curvature, the exponential map can be used to produce Jacobi fields as follows.

Example 9.15. Let $(M, g)$ be a complete Riemannian manifold, $p \in M$ and $v, w \in T_{p} M$. Then $s \mapsto s(v+t w)$ defines a 1-parameter family of lines in the tangent space $T_{p} M$ which all pass through the origin $0 \in T_{p} M$. Remember that the exponential map

$$
\left.\exp _{p}\right|_{B_{\varepsilon_{p}}^{m}(0)}: B_{\varepsilon_{p}}^{m}(0) \rightarrow \exp _{p}\left(B_{\varepsilon_{p}}^{m}(0)\right)
$$

maps lines in $T_{p} M$ through the origin onto geodesics on $M$. Hence the map

$$
\Phi_{t}: s \mapsto \exp _{p}(s(v+t w))
$$

is a 1-parameter family of geodesics through $p \in M$, as long as $s(v+t w)$ is an element of $B_{\varepsilon_{p}}^{m}(0)$. This means that

$$
J(s)=\left.\frac{\partial \Phi_{t}}{\partial t}(t, s)\right|_{t=0}=\left.d\left(\exp _{p}\right)_{s(v+t w)}(s w)\right|_{t=0}=d\left(\exp _{p}\right)_{s v}(s w)
$$

is a Jacobi field along the geodesic $\gamma: s \mapsto \Phi_{0}(s)$ with $\gamma(0)=p$ and $\dot{\gamma}(0)=v$. Here

$$
d\left(\exp _{p}\right)_{s(v+t w)}: T_{s(v+t w)} T_{p} M \rightarrow T_{\exp _{p}(s(v+t w))} M
$$

is the linear tangent map of the exponential map $\exp _{p}$ at $s(v+t w)$. Now differentiating with respect to the parameter $s$ gives

$$
\left(\nabla_{X} J\right)(0)=\left.\frac{d}{d s}\left(d\left(\exp _{p}\right)_{s v}(s w)\right)\right|_{s=0}=d\left(\exp _{p}\right)_{0}(w)=w
$$

The above calculations show that

$$
J(0)=0 \text { and }\left(\nabla_{X} J\right)(0)=w .
$$

For the proof of our main result, stated in Theorem 9.17, we need the following technical lemma.

Lemma 9.16. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold with sectional curvature uniformly bounded above by $\Delta$ and $\gamma:[0, \alpha] \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic on $M$ with $|X|=1$ where $X=\dot{\gamma}$. Further let $J:[0, \alpha] \rightarrow T M$ be a Jacobi field along $\gamma$ such that $g(J, X)=0$ and $|J| \neq 0$ on $(0, \alpha)$. Then
(i) $\frac{d^{2}}{d s^{2}}|J|+\Delta \cdot|J| \geq 0$,
(ii) if $f:[0, \alpha] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a $C^{2}$-function such that
(a) $\ddot{f}+\Delta \cdot f=0$ and $f>0$ on $(0, \alpha)$,
(b) $f(0)=|J|(0)$, and
(c) $\dot{f}(0)=|\dot{J}|(0)$,
then $f(s) \leq|J(s)|$ on $(0, \alpha)$,
(iii) if $J(0)=0$, then $|\dot{J}(0)| \cdot s_{\Delta}(s) \leq|J(s)|$ for all $s \in(0, \alpha)$.

Proof. (i) Using the facts that $|X|=1$ and $\langle X, J\rangle=0$ we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d^{2}}{d s^{2}}|J| & =\frac{d^{2}}{d s^{2}} \sqrt{g(J, J)}=\frac{d}{d s}\left(\frac{g\left(\nabla_{X} J, J\right)}{|J|}\right) \\
& =\frac{g\left(\nabla_{X} \nabla_{X} J, J\right)}{|J|}+\frac{\left|\nabla_{X} J\right|^{2}|J|^{2}-g\left(\nabla_{X} J, J\right)^{2}}{|J|^{3}} \\
& \geq \frac{g\left(\nabla_{X} \nabla_{X} J, J\right)}{|J|} \\
& =-\frac{g(R(J, X) X, J)}{|J|} \\
& =-K(X, J) \cdot|J| \\
& \geq-\Delta \cdot|J| .
\end{aligned}
$$

(ii) Define the function $h:[0, \alpha) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$
h(s)= \begin{cases}\frac{|J(s)|}{f(s)} & \text { if } s \in(0, \alpha), \\ \lim _{s \rightarrow 0} \frac{|J(s)|}{f(s)}=1 & \text { if } s=0 .\end{cases}
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{h}(s) & =\frac{1}{f^{2}(s)}\left\{\frac{d}{d s}|J(s)| \cdot f(s)-|J(s)| \cdot \dot{f}(s)\right\} \\
& =\frac{1}{f^{2}(s)} \int_{0}^{s} \frac{d}{d t}\left\{\frac{d}{d t}|J(t)| \cdot f(t)-|J(t)| \cdot \dot{f}(t)\right\} d t \\
& =\frac{1}{f^{2}(s)} \int_{0}^{s}\left\{\frac{d^{2}}{d t^{2}}|J(t)| \cdot f(t)-|J(t)| \cdot \ddot{f}(t)\right\} d t \\
& =\frac{1}{f^{2}(s)} \int_{0}^{s} f(t) \cdot\left\{\frac{d^{2}}{d t^{2}}|J(t)|+\Delta \cdot|J(t)|\right\} d t \\
& \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

This implies that $\dot{h}(s) \geq 0$ so $f(s) \leq|J(s)|$ for all $s \in(0, \alpha)$.
(iii) The function $f(s)=|\nabla X J(0)| \cdot s_{\Delta}(s)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$
\ddot{f}(s)+\Delta f(s)=0
$$

and the initial conditions $f(0)=|J(0)|=0, \dot{f}(0)=\left|\nabla_{X} J(0)\right|$ so it follows from (ii) that $\left|\nabla_{X} J(0)\right| \cdot s_{\Delta}(s)=f(s) \leq|J(s)|$ for all $s \in$ $(0, \alpha)$.

Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold of sectional curvature which is uniformly bounded above, i.e. there exists a $\Delta \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $K_{p}(V) \leq$ $\Delta$ for all $V \in G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right)$ and $p \in M$. Let $\left(M_{\Delta}, g_{\Delta}\right)$ be another Riemannian manifold which is complete and of constant sectional curvature $K \equiv \Delta$. Let $p \in M, p_{\Delta} \in M_{\Delta}$ and identify $T_{p} M \cong \mathbb{R}^{m} \cong T_{p_{\Delta}} M_{\Delta}$.

Let $U$ be an open neighbourhood of $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ around 0 such that the exponential maps $(\exp )_{p}$ and $(\exp )_{p_{\Delta}}$ are diffeomorphisms from $U$ onto their images $(\exp )_{p}(\mathrm{U})$ and $(\exp )_{p_{\Delta}}(U)$, respectively. Let $(r, p, q)$ be a geodesic triangle i.e. a triangle with sides which are shortest paths between their endpoints. Furthermore let $c:[a, b] \rightarrow M$ be the geodesic connecting $r$ and $q$ and $v:[a, b] \rightarrow T_{p} M$ be the curve defined by $c(t)=(\exp )_{p}(v(t))$. Put $c_{\Delta}(t)=(\exp )_{p_{\Delta}}(v(t))$ for $t \in[a, b]$ and then it directly follows that $c(a)=r$ and $c(b)=q$. Finally put $r_{\Delta}=c_{\Delta}(a)$ and $q_{\Delta}=c_{\Delta}(b)$.

Theorem 9.17. For the above situation the following inequality for the distance function $d$ is satisfied

$$
d\left(q_{\Delta}, r_{\Delta}\right) \leq d(q, r)
$$

Proof. Define a 1-parameter family $s \mapsto s \cdot v(t)$ of straight lines in $T_{p} M$ through $p$. Then

$$
\Phi_{t}: s \mapsto(\exp )_{p}(s \cdot v(t)) \text { and } \Phi_{t}^{\Delta}: s \mapsto(\exp )_{p_{\Delta}}(s \cdot v(t))
$$

are 1-parameter families of geodesics through $p \in M$, and $p_{\Delta} \in M_{\Delta}$, respectively. Hence

$$
J_{t}=\partial \Phi_{t} / \partial t \text { and } J_{t}^{\Delta}=\partial \Phi_{t}^{\Delta} / \partial t
$$

are Jacobi fields satisfying the initial conditions

$$
J_{t}(0)=J_{t}^{\Delta}(0)=0 \text { and }\left(\nabla_{X} J_{t}\right)(0)=\left(\nabla_{X} J_{t}^{\Delta}\right)(0)=\dot{v}(t)
$$

Using Lemma 9.16 we now obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\dot{c}_{\Delta}(t)\right| & =\left|J_{t}^{\Delta}(1)\right| \\
& =\left|\left(\nabla_{X} J_{t}^{\Delta}\right)(0)\right| \cdot s_{\Delta}(1) \\
& =\mid\left(\nabla_{X}^{\left.J_{t}\right)(0) \mid \cdot s_{\Delta}(1)}\right. \\
& \leq\left|J_{t}(1)\right| \\
& =|\dot{c}(t)|
\end{aligned}
$$

The curve $c$ is the shortest path between $r$ and $q$ so we have

$$
d\left(r_{\Delta}, q_{\Delta}\right) \leq L\left(c_{\Delta}\right) \leq L(c)=d(r, q)
$$

We now add the assumption that the sectional curvature of the manifold $(M, g)$ is uniformly bounded below i.e. there exists a $\delta \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\delta \leq K_{p}(V)$ for all $V \in G_{2}\left(T_{p} M\right)$ and $p \in M$. Let $\left(M_{\delta}, g_{\delta}\right)$ be a complete Riemannian manifold of constant sectional curvature $\delta$. Let $p \in M$ and $p_{\delta} \in M_{\delta}$ and identify $T_{p} M \cong \mathbb{R}^{m} \cong T_{p_{\delta}} M_{\delta}$. Then a similar construction as above gives two pairs of points $q, r \in M$ and $q_{\delta}, r_{\delta} \in M_{\delta}$ and shows that

$$
d(q, r) \leq d\left(q_{\delta}, r_{\delta}\right)
$$

Combining these two results we obtain locally

$$
d\left(q_{\Delta}, r_{\Delta}\right) \leq d(q, r) \leq d\left(q_{\delta}, r_{\delta}\right) .
$$

## Exercises

Exercise 9.1. Find a proof of Lemma 9.7.
Exercise 9.2. Let $(M, g)$ be a Riemannian manifold and $\gamma: I \rightarrow M$ be a geodesic such that $X=\dot{\gamma} \neq 0$. Further let $J$ be a non-vanishing Jacobi field along $\gamma$ with $g(X, J)=0$. Prove that if $g(J, J)$ is constant along $\gamma$ then $(M, g)$ does not have strictly negative curvature.

